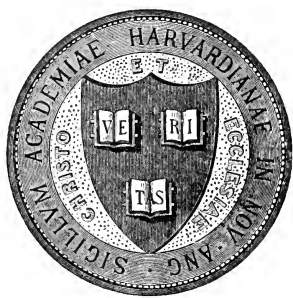


Scientific and Medical
Books, and all objects
of Natural History.
A. E. FOOTE, M. D.
1223 Belmont Ave.,
Philadelphia Pa.

Good copy

HARVARD UNIVERSITY.



LIBRARY

OF THE

MUSEUM OF COMPARATIVE ZOÖLOGY

72,274

LIBRARY OF

SAMUEL GARMAN

June 8, 1920

4
Zisman

JUN 8 1929

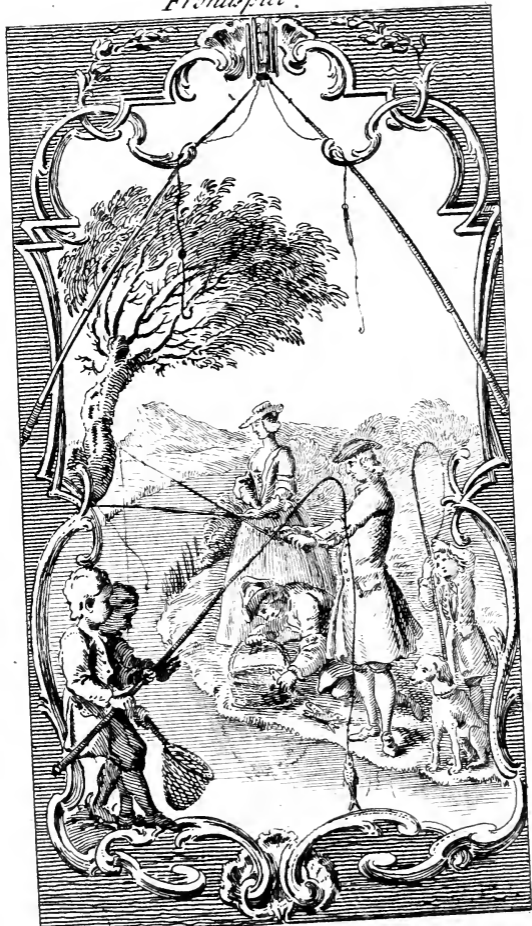
~~L. B. G.~~

L. B. G.





Frontispiec.



T H E
BRITISH ANGLER:
 O R, A
 P O C K E T - C O M P A N I O N
 F O R
 G E N T L E M E N - F I S H E R S .

B E I N G A

New and Methodical Treatise of the ART of ANGLING :
 Comprehending all that is Curious and Useful in the
 Knowledge of that Polite Diversion. As :

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>I. An <i>Introduction</i>; containing an Encomium on Rivers and the Art of Angling, with general Observations on the Nature of Fish.</p> <p>II. The <i>Angler's Apparatus</i> : Or, Directions concerning <i>Rods, Lines, Hooks, Floats</i>, and the rest of the Tackle : Also, of <i>Baits</i>, Natural and Artificial.</p> <p>III. An <i>exact Description</i> of the several Kinds of <i>Fish</i> that are found in the <i>Rivers</i>, and on the <i>Sea-Coasts</i> of Great Bri-</p> | <p><i>tain</i>; their <i>Size, Shape, Qualities, Seasons, Feeding, Haunts, &c.</i></p> <p>IV. <i>The whole Practice of Angling</i> : Teaching the Choice and Preparation of proper Stands; the Method of Taking every Species, more particularly the sportive <i>Trout</i>, the voracious <i>Pike</i>, and other Capital Game. With Descriptions of our principal Rivers, Observations relating to the Weather, and other necessary Remarks.</p> |
|---|--|

Together with

Supplemental DISCOURSES, 1. On Fish-ponds and Reservoirs. 2. On the Laws against Poachers, and in Favour of the Fair Angler.

A L S O,

Excellent RECEIPTS for Dressing of Fish, and a Complete INDEX, in which the Terms in Use among Anglers are occasionally explained.

Embellished with Copper Plates Curiously Engraved

The Whole Compiled from approved Authors, and above Thirty Years Experience,

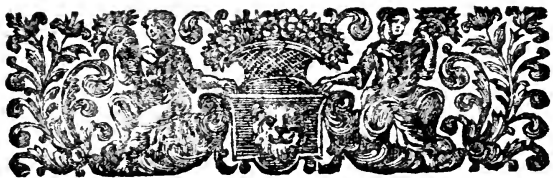
By JOHN WILLIAMSON, Gent.

Who has added a Verification of the principal Heads, at the End of each Chapter, for the Help of Memory.

L O N D O N :

Printed for J. HODGES, at the *Looking-Glass* on *London-Bridge*, MDCCL.





T H E

P R E F A C E.

I F a Man was to read over all the Books of Angling that have been published for about a Hundred Years past, he would be apt to think that this Science was like Poetry, not only for Mr. Walton's Reason, because Men must be born with Inclinations to it, but because it seems to have arrived at its highest Perfection almost at once, and to have been the same in the said Mr. Walton as the other was in Homer.

The Improvements that have been made by the generality of Writers since his Time are indeed so few, and for the most Part so trivial, rather adding to and perplexing his Words, like the Commentators on the Greek Poet, than either clearing up or enlarging his Sense, that I could not but wonder at seeing so much done to so little Purpose. As I had resolved therefore to give the Public a new Treatise on this Subject, which I knew was very much wanted, and not likely, as I could hear, to be undertaken by any abler Hand, it was my Business to consider what Methods I should take to avoid the Imputation so generally thrown on others, and compose a Work that should have in Faët what it promised, an Air of Novelty. How I have proceeded, is what I am now to inform the Reader.

All that was solid, and had the Test of Experience to confirm it, in the Old Writers, I have retained; leaving out, and sometimes briefly refuting, their false Reasonings, idle superstitious Observances, and weak fabulous Accounts of Natural Causes. The Improvements that have lately been made in experimental Philosophy enabled me to do this, and will help every careful Writer to perform as much, or perhaps more, in any other Branch of Knowledge that depends thereon. This was all I could promise myself in the Article of retrenching; and if I have given any new Ornaments to what is left, by making the Language either more modern or more per-
spi-

spicuous, I believe it is all that can be expected by others.

The great Difficulty was to find sufficient to add. For this, besides my own Observations, which I was not so vain as to depend much on, unless they had the Concurrence of others, I have gathered up all that I could from the Conversation of my Angling Friends, whose good Nature in this respect I cannot but acknowledge. I have also found something in one or two of the most modern Books, which however I have been sparing in the Use of, as thinking it fairer to let their Authors speak for themselves. The most I have borrowed is on the Articles of Thames and Rock-fishing, and that I have so much reduced, that it can be no Prejudice to any larger Account. Almost every Angler about London knows as much of the Thames as is necessary, and very few have either Opportunity or Inclination to pursue the other.

But the great Advantage, as well as Ornament of this Book, and which must eminently distinguish it from all others, is the Poetical Part, which cannot but be equally useful and entertaining. I dare speak so highly of it, because a great Number of the Lines are by Writers of the first Rank. It was my remembring so many of these, and at the same Time lighting on an ingenious little Book called The Innocent Epicure, which more than doubled my Quantity, that first put me in
the

the Head of thus adding a Summary in Verse to each Chapter. What was not already done, I was obliged to attempt myself, and even to alter and adjust much of what was, to make it correspond with my Plan; which, with the Execution of it, I now leave to the candid and impartial Reader.

J. W.



CONTENTS.

I NTRODUCTION.	Page 1
Sect. 1. <i>The Beauty and Usefulness of Rivers</i>	2
Sect. 2. <i>An Encomium on the Art of Angling</i>	5
Sect. 3. <i>General Observations on the Nature of Fish</i>	14

Part I. Containing the Angler's Apparatus.

Chap. 1. <i>Of Angling Rods</i>	32
Chap. 2. <i>Of Lines</i>	39
Chap. 3. <i>Of Hooks, Floats, Plummets, Landing-hooks, and Landing-nets, with other Utensils</i>	50
Chap. 4. <i>Of natural Baits; particularly of Earth-worms, Caterpillars, Grubs, Cadews, and Gentles</i>	62
Chap. 5. <i>A Continuation of natural Baits; particularly Blood, Grain, Fish and Fish-spawn, Fruits, Flies, and other Insects</i>	82
Chap. 6. <i>Of Pastes and Unguents</i>	96
Chap. 7. <i>Of Artificial, or Dub Flies</i>	106

Part II. Containing a Description of the several Sorts of Fish.

Chap. 1. <i>Of the Salmon</i>	128
Chap. 2. <i>Of the Trout</i>	139
Chap. 3. <i>Of the Umber or Grayling</i>	153
Chap. 4. <i>Of the Pike, Jack, or Luce</i>	156
Chap. 5. <i>Of the Perch</i>	181
Chap. 6. <i>Of the Carp</i>	185
Chap. 7. <i>Of the Tench</i>	193
Chap. 8. <i>Of the Barbel</i>	197
Chap.	

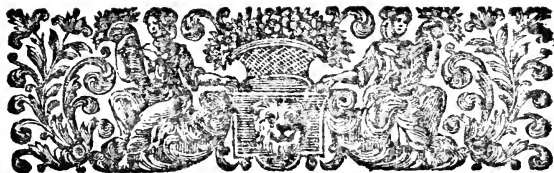
Chap. 9. <i>Of the Bream</i>	201
Chap. 10. <i>Of the Chub or Chevin</i>	210
Chap. 11. <i>Of the Eel</i>	216
Chap. 12. <i>Of the Roach and the Rud</i>	223
Chap. 13. <i>Of the Dace</i>	226
Chap. 14. <i>Of the Gudgeon</i>	231
Chap. 15. <i>Of the Pope or Ruff</i>	233
Chap. 16. <i>Of the Bleak</i>	235
Chap. 17. <i>Of the Minnow or Penk, the Loach, the Bull-head or Miller's Thumb, and the Stickle-bag</i>	236
Chap. 18. <i>Of Local Fishes, or those which are peculiar to certain Waters</i>	240
Chap. 19. <i>Of Flounders, Mulletts, Smelts</i>	242
Chap. 20. <i>Of Fish taken on the Rocks, and at Sea</i>	246

Part III. Teaching the whole Practice of Angling.

Chap. 1. <i>General Observations regarding the Angler and his Sport</i>	250
Chap. 2. <i>Of the Seasons proper for Angling</i>	262
Chap. 3. <i>Of the principal Rivers in England, and particularly of the Thames</i>	271
Chap. 4. <i>Of the various Methods of Angling</i>	279
Chap. 5. <i>Of Rock and Sea-Fishing</i>	295

APPENDIX.

Dis. I. <i>Of Fish-Ponds</i>	301
Dis. II. <i>Of the Laws of Angling</i>	306
<i>Receipts for the Dressing of Fish</i>	312



T H E

British A N G L E R.

I N T R O D U C T I O N.

The Beauty and Usefulness of Rivers. An Eulogium on the Art of Angling. General Observations on the Nature of Fish.



BEFORE I enter upon the Theory of the Art of Angling, it is necessary that I should endeavour to remove those Prejudices which are too commonly brought against it, and to recommend a Diversion which is not only the most innocent, but may be made the most advantageous, both to the Body and the Mind, of any that ever has been invented. And first let us survey the Seat of this Diversion, the Banks of a River.

B

S E C T.

S E C T. I.

The Beauty and Usefulness of Rivers.

WHAT a delightful Scene, says a late Author, is a soft murmuring Stream! Whether we reflect on the gentle Motion of its Waters, or on the various Benefits and Advantages arising from it, or use our Endeavours to trace it to its Head; we are charmed with its gliding in such beautiful Meanders: The numberless Accommodations it affords us, fill us with the most grateful Acknowledgments, and our Curiosity is excited, to the last Degree, by the Obscurity of its Original.

Let us consider it in its gradual Progression and Increase. It is at first nothing more than a Vein of Water, issuing from some Hill, upon a Bed of Sand or Clay. The little Stones that are dispersed round about, are sufficient to interrupt its Current. It turns and winds, and murmurs as it rolls along. At last it clears its Way, falls in a Torrent down upon the Plains, and swells, by being united with some other Streams. It hollows the Ground by the Rapidity of its Fall, and throws up the Earth on each Side of it. It insensibly forces its way thro' every Thing that obstructs its Passage, and digs a Bed or Channel for itself. The Overflowing of the adjacent Ponds, the Snow that melts, and
trickles

trickles down the Hills, and the additional Supplies of various Brooks and Rills that fall into it, fortify and enrich it. Then it assumes a Name, and steers its Course along the Sides of flowry Meads: It takes a Tour all round the Hills, and graces, as it turns and winds, the spacious Plains.

'Tis the general Rendezvous of almost all Kind of living Creatures. A Thousand little parti-coloured Birds, of various Notes, divert themselves upon its sandy Banks, skim o'er its Surface, dip their Wings in its refreshing Streams, and sometimes plunge to the Bottom in pursuit of Game. This is their favourite Place all Day; and when the Approach of Night compels them to withdraw, they quit it with Reluctance. The numerous Herds forsake their Pastures twice a Day to pay their visit to the Streams, in which they quench their Thirst, or seek some cool Retreat. In a Word, the River is as delightful to Man, as it is to the Birds and Beasts: We generally reject the Hills and Woods, and fix our Habitations on its Banks.

It enriches the Fishermen with a Profusion of its Stores, and refreshes the Farmer's thirsty Soil. It adorns the pompous Seats of the Nobility with the most delightful Prospects, and makes the Country every way agreeable: It pays a Visit to those large Towns that are indebted to its friendly Streams for all their Wealth and Commerce: There it majestically rolls along between two Rows of costly

Buildings, which not only adorn, but are adorned by it. The incessant Concourse of People, the Multitude of Carriages of all Sorts, that are for ever passing over its Bridges; the infinite Number of Boats, and other Vessels, that are constantly floating on its Surface; in short, those agreeable, but confused Sounds that are heard, not only over its Waters, but all along its Kays, give us at once the Idea of Trade and Opulence.

The principal Aim of Divine Providence in the Formation of Rivers, was, no doubt, to furnish both Man and Beast with one of the most necessary Ornaments of Life; one that will either refresh us when we are faint and thirsty, keep our Habitations as well as our Bodies clean and wholesome, and not only dress our daily Provisions, but adorn our Table with the most delicate Part of them. Passing over the Golden Sands, that in some Countries roll down their Streams, we may always apply to our Rivers for this other Kind of Treasure, which we shall find with more Certainty, and procure with greater Ease. Tho' the infinite Variety of Fish with which the Sea abounds for our Refreshment and Delight, seems a perfect Prodigy; yet those which our Rivers nourish and support are still more surprising. And if the Fishes did not, by Instinct, put in Practice a Thousand artful Stratagems for the Preservation of their Species, which contribute at the same Time as much to our Advantage and Pleasure,

sure, as their own Safety, they would never be able, in so small a Compass of Water, to avoid the numberless Snares and Engines that are every where planted, in order to surprize them. But of these Engines, which are most of them unfair, and highly prejudicial to the Gentleman Angler, I shall take no other Notice than to condemn the Use of them, and proceed to the Consideration of the Art of Angling, which is the Subject of this Treatise.

S E C T. II.

An Encomium on the Art of Angling.

I Call Angling an *Art*, and an *Art* it is worthy a wise Man's learning. It is, said an excellent Angler, somewhat like Poetry; Men must be born with Inclinations to it; tho' both may be improved by Conversation and Practice. He that expects to be a good Angler, should not only possess a penetrating Wit, but a large Measure of Hope and Patience, and a Propensity to the Art itself: But having once acquired and practised it, Angling will then prove so pleasant, that, like Virtue, it will be a Reward to itself.

Some say that Angling is as antient as *Deucalion's* Flood: Others that *Belus*, who was the first Inventor of virtuous Recreations, was also the first Angler; and others again, that *Seth*, one of the Sons of *Adam*, taught it to his Children,

and that by them it was derived to Posterity. Lastly, there are some who maintain that he left it engraven on those Pillars, which he erected, to perpetuate the Knowledge of the Mathematicks, Musick, and the rest of those useful Arts, which, by God's Allowance, and his own Industry, were preserved from perishing in *Noah's* Flood. Possibly the Authors of all these Opinions have endeavoured to make Angling more antient than can justly be warranted: But of this we are certain, that it was practised long before the Incarnation of our Saviour: For in the Prophet *Amos* mention is made of Fish-hooks; and in the Book of *Job*, which is thought to have been written by *Moses*, they are again mentioned; which must imply Anglers in those Times.

And as for the *Utility* of this Diversion, we must consider an antient Question, which remains yet unresolv'd, Whether the Happiness of Man in this World consists more in Contemplation or Action? Those who maintain the first Opinion, argue, That the nearer we Mortals come to God by Way of Imitation, the more happy we are. God, say they, enjoys himself only by a Contemplation of his own Infinity, Eternity, Power, Goodness, and other Attributes. Upon this Ground many Persons of great Learning and Devotion prefer Contemplation before Action: And several of the Fathers seem to ap-
prove

I N T R O D U C T I O N. 7

prove this Opinion, as may appear in their Commentaries upon the Words of our Saviour to *Martha*. But then, on the contrary, there want not other Men of equal Authority and Credit, who prefer an active Life, especially when it contributes to the Good of others, either of their Country in general, or of particular Persons. Action, according to them, is doctrinal ; it teaches both Art and Virtue, and preserves human Society ; and for these, and other like Reasons, is to be preferred before Contemplation.

Without pretending to determine between these two Opinions, it is sufficient to say, that both Contemplation and Action here meet together, and belong properly to the honest, ingenuous, quiet, and innocent Art of Angling. The very sitting by the River's Side, is not only the calmest and fittest Place for Contemplation, but will invite an Angler to it. Hence the learned *Peter du Moulin* observes, that when God intended to reveal any future Events or high Notions to his Prophets, he usually carried them either to the Desarts or the Sea-shore, that having so separated them from amidst the Multitude of People and Business, and the Cares of the World, he might settle their Minds in a quiet Repose, and render them fit to receive the Revelation. And this seems also to be intimated by the Children of *Israel*, who having in their Captivity banished all Mirth and Musick from their pensive Hearts, and hung up their mute

8 The BRITISH ANGLER.

Harps upon the Willows by the Rivers of *Babylon*; sat down upon those Banks bemoaning the Ruins of *Sion*, and contemplating their own sad Condition. An ingenious *Spaniard* therefore very justly says, That Rivers and the Inhabitants of the watry Element were made for wise Men to contemplate, and Fools to pass by without Consideration. Doubtless it was for the same Reason that the Prophet *David* expresses himself thus: *They that occupy themselves in deep Waters, see the wonderful Works of God.* Such Wonders indeed as the Land does not afford.

And that the Waters are fit for the Contemplation of the most prudent, pious, and peaceable Men, seems to be testified by the Practice of so many devout and contemplative Persons, as the Patriarchs, Prophets, and Apostles of Old. Of these latter, we are sure our Saviour chose four of the twelve that were simple Fishermen, whom he sent to publish his Will to the *Gentiles*, and inspired with a Power to speak all Languages, and by their mighty Eloquence to beget Faith in the unbelieving Jews; to preach Freedom from the Incumbrances of the Law, and a new Way to everlasting Life. This was the Employment of these happy Fishermen; and it has been observed, that Christ never reprov'd them on Account of their Calling, as he did the Scribes and the Money-Changers. He found that the Hearts of such Men, by Nature, were fitted for Quietness and Con-
tem-

INTRODUCTION. 9

temptation; that they were Men of mild, sweet, and peaceable Spirits. These our blessed Saviour, who loves to plant Grace in good Natures, chose to call from their irreproachable Employment of Fishing, and constitute them his Disciples, enabling them to follow him, and to do Wonders. Nay, these four Fishermen had a Priority of Nomination in the Catalogue of his twelve Apostles, which are reckoned, 1. *St. Peter*, 2. *St. Andrew*, 3. *St. James*, 4. *St. John*, and the rest in their Order. And when our blessed Saviour went up into the Mount, and left the rest of his Disciples, chusing only three to bear him Company at his Transfiguration, those three were all Fishermen. Nor do we want Arguments to make it believed, that all the other Apostles, after they became Followers of Christ, became also Fishermen: For it is certain that the greater Number of them were found together Fishing by *Jesus* after his Resurrection, as it is recorded in *St. John's Gospel*.

It has been judiciously remarked, that tho' God every where inspires the Matter of the sacred Writings, yet he suffers the holy Penmen to express his Will in such Style and Metaphors as their former Affections or Practice had made familiar to them. Thus *Solomon*, for Example, who before his Conversion was remarkably amorous, after his Repentance wrote that spiritual Dialogue, or holy Love-song, the *Canticles*, betwixt God and his Church; in

which he says his Beloved had *Eyes like the Fish-pools of Heshbon*. And if this Remark will hold good in general, by the same Rule it may be probably concluded, that *Moses*, who wrote the Book of *Job*, and the Prophet *Amos*, who was a Shepherd, were both Anglers. But this may more especially be presumed of *Amos*, whose humble, lowly, plain Stile, when compared with the pompous and lofty Eloquence of the Prophet *Isaiab*, will easily induce us to believe him to be not only a Shepherd, but a good-natured honest Fisherman. And much the same may be observed in comparing the affectionate, loving, and pathetic Epistles of St. *Peter*, St. *James*, and St. *John*, who we know were all Fishers, with the sublime Language and high Metaphors of St. *Paul*, who we are pretty certain was not.

As for the Lawfulness of Fishing to a Professor of Christianity, it may be maintained from our Saviour's Practice, who bade St. *Peter* cast his Hook into the Water and take out a Fish, for Money to pay Tribute to the *Roman* Emperor.

We may even add the Dignity of this Art to its other Advantages, it having been the Amusement of mighty Kings and consecrated Priests. *Mark Anthony* and *Cleopatra*, in the Midst of their dazzling Glory, used Angling as a principal Recreation. And he that reads the antient Ecclesiastical Canons, will find Hunting forbidden to Churchmen, as being a
tur-

turbulent, toilsome, and fatiguing Recreation ; but that Angling is allowed to them, as being a harmless Diversion, a Recreation that invites them to Calmness and Contemplation.

Mr. *Walton*, from whom I have extracted much of this Encomium on Angling (which is almost the only Part of his Book that has not been transcribed by all who since him have wrote on that Art) proceeds to mention several Men of our own Nation who were accomplished Anglers. The two he chiefly insists on, are Dr. *Nowell* and Sir *Henry Wotton*; his Characters of whom I shall here insert, with little Variation from his own Words. Dr. *Nowell*, sometime Dean of the Cathedral of *St. Paul's* in *London*, where his Monument stands yet undefaced, in the Reformation of *Queen Elizabeth*, was so noted for his meek Spirit, deep Learning, Prudence, and Piety, that the then Parliament and Convocation, chose, enjoined, and trusted him to compile a Catechism for publick Use, to stand as a Rule for Faith and Manners to their Posterity. And the good old Man, though he was very learned, like an honest Angler, made that plain, unperplex'd Form of Words which is printed with our Service-Book. This excellent Man was as dear a Lover and constant Practicer of Angling as any Age can produce : His Custom was to spend, besides his fix'd Hours of Prayer, a tenth Part of his Time in that Diversion, and also (for I have conversed with those, says Mr. *Walton*,

Walton, who have conversed with him) to bestow a tenth Part of his Revenue, and usually all his Fish, amongst the Poor that inhabited near those Rivers in which they were caught. And at his Return to his House he would praise God that he had spent that Day free from worldly Trouble, both harmlessly, and in a Recreation that became a Churchman. Nay he was even content, if not desirous, that Posterity should know he was an Angler, which is evident from his Picture, now carefully kept in *Brafen-Nose-College*, where he is drawn leaning on a Desk with his Bible before him; on one Hand of him his Lines, Hooks, and other Tackling lying in a Round; and on the other his Angle-Rods of several Sorts, with this Inscription by them: *That he died 13 Feb. 1601, aged 95 Years, 44 of which he had been Dean of St. Paul's Church; and that his Age had neither impaired his Hearing, nor dimm'd his Eyes, nor weakened his Memory, nor made any of the Faculties of his Mind weak or useles.* 'Tis said that Angling and Temperance were two great Causes of these inestimable Blessings.

Our Author's next and last Example is, that Despiser of Money Sir *Henry Wotton*, with whom he had often fished and conversed. A Man whose foreign Employments in the Service of this Nation, and whose Experience, Learning, Wit, and Cheerfulness, made his Company to be esteemed one of the Delights of Mankind; and whose very Approbation of

An-

Angling is alone sufficient to outweigh all unjust Censure. Sir *Henry* was not only a most dear Lover, and a frequent Practiser of the Art of Angling; but would often say of it, *It was an Employment for his idle Time, which was not then idly spent: For Angling, after tedious Study, was a Rest to his Mind, a Cheerer of his Spirits, a Diverter of Sadness, a Calmer of unquiet Thoughts, a Moderator of Passions, a Procurer of Contentedness; and that it begat Habits of Peace and Patience in those who professed and practised it.* In a Word, he found Angling to be like the Virtue of Humility, which has a Calmness of Spirit, and a World of other Blessings attending upon it.

The following Lines, written by him at above 70 Years of Age, may give an Idea of his Temper.

*This Day Dame Nature seem'd in love,
The lusty Sap began to move;
Fresh Juice did stir th' embracing Vines,
And Birds had drawn their Valentines:
The jealous Trout, that low did lie,
Rose at a well-dissembled Fly.
There stood my Friend with patient Skill,
Attending of his trembling Quill.
The Groves already did rejoice
In Philomel's triumphing Voice:
The Showers were short; the Weather mild;
The Morning fresh; the Evening smil'd.
Thus all look'd gay, and full of Cheer,
To welcome the new-livery'd Year.*

S E C T. III.

General Observations on the Nature of Fish.

HA V I N G thus endeavoured to vindicate the Reputation of Angling, and in particular to shew how very suitable it is to a contemplative Person, I proceed to direct the Gentleman Angler in the most natural Road of Meditation, by pointing out to him so much of the Properties and Mechanism of Fish in general, as may enable him to consider them with Understanding, and to form judiciously such Observations as may occur to him in the Pursuit of his Diversion. Every Thing I shall offer will be the Result of Experience, and what has been communicated by the most diligent Inspectors into Nature. The Points I shall here chiefly insist on, are, 'The Element peculiar to Fish; their Clothing; their Numbers; the regular Passage of some Species; their Wars, and the Means of their Preservation; their Fecundity, and the Purpose of it; their Food; the natural Cause of their Swimming, with the peculiar Use of their Tails, Fins, Bags of Air, and Gills; their other Parts; their Cunning; their Sensations, and the extraordinary Share of Life in some Kinds of them.

The Universe abounds with an infinite Variety of living Creatures. Some are Inhabitants

habitants of the Air ; others range around the Fields, or crawl upon the Ground : Thousands reside in the inmost Recesses of Woods, in the Hearts of Leaves, and under the Bark of Trees : Some in the Chinks and Crevices of Walls ; and others in the most gloomy Caverns. The very Bowels of the Earth are hollowed, and filled with Inhabitants. All these Animals, how different soever from each other, with respect to their Nature and Way of Life, enjoy one Benefit in common : They all breathe the fluid Air. But we have, at present, another Element under our Consideration, wherein all of them are stifled as soon as they are plunged into it. Yet we therein discover a vast Variety of Beings ; and observe, that as Terrestrial Animals are suffocated in the Waves ; so the Inhabitants of the watry Regions soon expire in the Air, and cannot long subsist out of that Element, to which they are consigned.

But it is hard to comprehend how their Blood should circulate with that Freedom, which it indisputably does ; for one would think it should coagulate and condense by the excessive Chilness of the Waters. Such Animals as live upon the Earth, are either furnished with Feathers, and a delicate Down, or invested with warm Furs, or long Hairs, to defend them from the Inclemencies of the Air, which is sometimes exceedingly cold : But no Fish, as we can find, have any such agreeable Accommodations. How then has Nature provided for them, that they are able to sub-

sist

sist in an Element much colder than the Air?

Let us recollect what we have often discovered, as we have been accidentally handling a Fish, or cutting one open. The first Thing that offers itself to our Touch, is a certain glutinous Matter, with which the whole Surface of the Creature's Body is duly moistened. We find, moreover, a Coat, consisting of strong and beautiful Scales; and before we come to the Animal's Flesh, we observe a Kind of Lard, or oily Substance, which extends from Head to Tail, and surrounds the Whole. Tho' we cannot easily conceive how these Scales are formed, or how they gradually increase and are supplied, or what is the Origin and Reservoir of this Oil; yet these Scales by their Solidity, and this Oil by its Antipathy to the Water, keep the Fish warm, and give him Life and Vigour. He could not possibly be furnished with a lighter Vestment, or one more impenetrable.

The Sea carries off from the Lands, which it washes, a Vitriol and Bitumen, that, like itself, being in a perpetual Motion, disperse and incorporate in such a Manner with the smallest Particles of the Water, that no Filtrations, no Alembicks, or any other Devices, how artful soever, have been able to purify and free it from its brackish Taste. It is in this nauseous and offensive Water however, that the all-wise Creator has thought fit to improve and bring to Perfection the Flesh of those Fish which the most
Volup-

Voluptuous prefer before the choicest Fowls. In an Element that produces nothing, it is impossible, one would imagine, that the Number or Fertility of the Inhabitants should be any Thing considerable; yet what a prodigious Quantity of Muscles, Crabs, Lobsters, and other Fish of an enormous Size; what Piles of Oysters, whose Whiteness and Fat give a Keeness to the Appetite; what a Profusion of Turbots, Flounders, Dabs, Burts, Plaice, and all the various Species of flat Fish, whose Flesh is so exceedingly admired, does it furnish us with? We observe, in the Season, whole Fleets of Ships freighted with Herrings; and at other Times Shoals of Mackarel and Whittings present themselves voluntarily before us upon the Coasts; insomuch that whole Provinces are supplied with a sufficient Quantity of them by the bare Capture of a single Day. Legions of Smelts and Flounders forsake the Salt Waters in the Spring, and begin to swim up the Rivers. Shads follow the same Tract, and grow to their full Perfection in the fresh Water. Salmons continue till *July*, and sometimes later, to enrich the Fishers, though threescore, and sometimes fourscore Leagues from the Sea. Every Season regales us with fresh Delicacies, without the least Interruption of their usual Presents; such as Lampreys, Smelts, Tunnies, Soles, Thornbacks, and a vast Variety of other Fish that adorn our Dishes, and gratify the nicest Taste. What a Delicacy, what a Profusion of Provisions

vifions do we receive from the Indulgence of this Element!

This very Delicacy, however, might poffibly fo enhance their Value, that none but the Rich could purchafe them; or the Plenty might be fo great, that the Corruption of the Whole, or the greateft Part, might prevent their timely Confumption. But both thefe Inconveniencies are effectually prevented by a little Salt. Thus the Sea is lavish of her Stores, and at the fame time furnifhes us with that which renders their Communication eafy, and their Conveyance fafe. We obferve likewife in this Profufion of the Sea, a Precaution which enhances the Value of her Gifts, and proves an additional Bleffing. Such Fish as are wholefome Food and agreeable to the Taffe, are exceedingly prolifick; but thofe, on the other Hand, whofe Flefh is unpalatable, or prejudicial to our Health, and whofe monftrous Size renders them formidable to others, for the Generality bring forth their Young completely formed into the World, and feldom more than one or two at a Birth. The fame Wifdom that has regulated with fuch Indulgence the Bounds of their Fecundity, keeps thofe at a wide Diftance from our Shores, which we have the leaft Occafion for, and puts others into our Poffeffion, which are of moft Benefit and Advantage to us. Some Species are with us all the Year long, and others pay us an annual Vifit in prodigious Multitudes. The exact Time of their Paffage, and their

their peculiar Track, is well known, which are very advantageous Circumstances, though sometimes it may vary 10 or 15 Days, by means of strong Winds or bad Weather. We may form an adequate Idea of other Fish of Passage from the Herrings and Cods. The former seem to have their principal Rendezvous between the Points of *Scotland*, *Norway*, and *Denmark*. From thence the *Danish* Colonies take their annual Progress, and, at different Seasons, cross the Channel. Their Voyage is performed with the utmost Exactness: Their Track is prescribed, and their March regulated. The whole Body move at once; not one of them presumes to struggle, pillage, or desert. When the Body of their Army is once passed, not one of the same Species appears again till the Year ensuing. An infinite Number of Worms and little Fish are bred every Summer in the Channel, with which the Herrings regale themselves. They are a Sort of Manna, which these Animals never fail of picking up; and when they have cleared the Seas in the Northern Parts of *Europe*, they descend towards the South, to which they are attracted by the pleasing Prospect of a new Stock of Provisions.

We have but very few Cod-fish in our Seas. Their general Rendezvous is at the immense Bank before *Newfoundland*. There they are so numerous, that the Fishermen, who resort thither from all Parts, are constantly employ'd, and find their Labours attended with surprizing

ing

ing Success. One Man shall sometimes catch three or four hundred in a Day. When the Sustenance that attracts them is exhausted in these Parts, they disperse, and proclaim open War with the Whitings, which are their favourite Aliment. The latter fly before them; and their frequent Returns upon our Coasts are principally owing to this hostile Chace.

As to those several Species of Fish which are the constant Inhabitants of our Rivers, being to treat of them distinctly in the Body of this Book, I shall not prevent myself by speaking of them here. However, I cannot help giving the Reader, for his Amusement, the following beautiful Lines of Mr. *Pope*, in which he has not only given a charming Description of Angling, but characterised five of our principal Sorts of Fish.

*In genial Spring, beneath the quiv'ring Shade,
Where cooling Vapours breathe along the Mead,
The patient Fisher takes his silent Stand,
Intent, his Angle trembling in his Hand;
With Looks unmov'd, he hopes the scaly Breed,
And eyes the dancing Cork, and bending Reed.
Our plenteous Streams a various Race supply:
The bright-ey'd Perch, with Fins of Tyrian Dye;
The silver Eel, in shining Volumes roll'd;
The yellow Carp, in Scales bedrop'd with Gold;
Swift Trouts diversify'd with crimson Stains,
And Pikes, the Tyrants of the watry Plains.*

Having

Having mentioned the Wars of the Cods and Whitings, I must take Notice of one Circumstance, which reigns thro' all the Species of Fish. The Muscle lies in Ambuscade within the Mud; there she opens her Shells, and when a small unwary Crab presumes to creep in, she claps them close together in an Instant, and secures her Prey. The Oyster takes the same Measures to ensnare such little Fish as are not on their Guard. The Sole, and most Flat-fish lie conceal'd likewise in the Soil, to the Colour whereof their Backs bear a near Resemblance, and observe, with the utmost Circumspection, where the Females of large Fish sink commodious Lodgments for their Spawn, whereon the Males afterwards diffuse their impregnating Fluid, to render such Spawn prolific. The Sole springs instantaneously from her Ambuscade, and regales herself with this delicious Food, which pampers her up, and gives her an exquisite Flavour. The small Soles, in their Turn, are equally an agreeable Collation to the large Crabs; and when we open one of these latter, we seldom fail of finding a Sole or two in the Belly of it. You may form an Idea of the other Species by this. All the several Classes of living Creatures that breed in the Water, from the biggest to the least, are constantly in Action, and at War with each other. 'Tis one continued Series of Artifices, Flights, Evasions, and open Violence. They pillage and devour one another, without Remorse or Moderation.

But

But if the Inhabitants of the watry Regions have such a watchful Eye upon the scattered Spawn, and are thus addicted to devour one another, this Element, one would think, must, in process of Time, cease to be replenished; for since the lesser Fish are the proper Sustenance of the larger, the former must of Course be all destroyed; and the latter, in their Turn, perish for want of Subsistence. The Almighty, however, has taken proper Measures for the Preservation of Fish, by giving Strength to some, Activity and Circumspection to others; and by a Multiplication of them to such a prodigious Degree, that their Fecundity exceeds their natural Inclination to prey upon each other. Be the Number of Cods ever so great, that have been caught this Year, or devour'd in the Sea by the Invasion of their Enemies, there is still a Remainder of that Tribe, which is more than sufficient to furnish us with as large a Quantity about two Years hence. The Fact is demonstrable by the following Instance. A fine fresh Cod being produced before Mr. *Leurwenboeck*, he had the Curiosity to count her Eggs, for which Purpose he took as many as weighed a Dram, and told them over. After this he weighed the whole Mass of Eggs, which, allowing eight Times the Number to every Ounce, amounted to no less than nine Millions, three hundred forty-four thousand Eggs.

As incredible as this Account may seem to be at first View, the Quantity of Eggs so frequently

quently found in a common Carp, tho' far short of the Number contain'd in a large Cod, is so surprizing, that we may be fully satisfied Mr. *Leuwenhoeck's* Calculation is just. When we come to search into the wise End of this amazing Fertility, we are immediately convinced, that it is not to replenish either the Rivers, or the Sea, with the same Quantity of Fish as there are Eggs: For were it so, the Ocean itself would scarce be able to contain them. 'Tis manifest, however, that that there is a double Intention in this Fecundity; in the first Place, to preserve the Species, whatever Accidents may happen; and in the next, to furnish the surviving Fish with a plentiful and succulent Subsistence.

Thus we perceive, in some measure, the Manner in which the Fish are nourished and preserved. There are such an infinite Number of Weeds, Worms, Shell-fish, Eggs, Roes, and minute Fish lodged within the Waters, that we need be in no Manner of Concern for the Inhabitants, with respect to their Provisions. They have, we perceive, their certain Allowance.—But then their Aliment lies conceal'd, or flies before them; and we can discern nothing in these Fish but a Head, a large inactive Body, and a Tail. As they have so few Organs, we naturally ask, how are they capable of advancing, swimming, and seizing on their Prey? To solve this we must consider, that the Form, or Figure, of all Fish in general being strait,
an

and growing always somewhat taper at the Head, enables them to traverse the Water. The Tail, by the Assistance of the Muscles, is exceedingly pliant, strong, and active; inclines to the Right and Left, and, when reduced to a direct Line, repels the Water that lies behind it: Immediately it resumes its playing, and, by this alternate Motion, advances the Head, and in short the whole Body, in a much more agreeable Manner than an Oar, work'd alternately to and fro at the Stern of a Boat, conveys it up a River. The Fins, which lie under the Fish's Belly, are sometimes of singular Service; not only in repelling the Water, and advancing the Body; but in stopping its Course, when they are extended, and lie at rest. Their peculiar Office, however, is to direct the Movement of the Body, by keeping it in an equal Poise; so that in Case the Fish should only move the Fins on its right Side, and bring those on its Left close to its Body, all the Motion is in an Instant determined to that Side: Just as a Boat, that has two Oars, when but one is made use of, will infallibly turn to that Side whereto it is impell'd by the Working of the other. If you cut off a Fish's Fins, the Back, which is heavier than the Belly, being no longer in an Equilibrium, will either lie aslant, or be turned directly up; as is the Case with dead Fish, whose Fins lie always on the Surface of the Water.

It is easy to conceive, from what has been said, how a Fish is capable of advancing in a direct Line: But the Difficulty that remains, is, how they do to rise and fall in the Water. Now most Fish, it must be observed, have a Bladder, or something equivalent to it, the Use of which is quite different from what most People imagine. This supposed Bladder is a Bag of Air, by Virtue of which the Fish are enabled, according to its Enlargement or Contraction, to rise or sink.

Nothing is more easy to be conceived than this, if we lay down as incontestable Maxims, equally consistent with Experience and good Sense, 1. That a Body will swim upon the Water when 'tis lighter than that Quantity of the Fluid whose Place it fills. 2. That a Body is more ponderous, according as the Parts of it are more compact, and contain in them a lesser Quantity of Air; and lighter, according as they are porous, and contain in them a larger Quantity of Air.

These Positions allowed, the Body of a Fish, which is heavier than the Mass of Water whose Place it possesses, would unavoidably sink to the Bottom, had not the Fish in its Intestines a Vessel, or Bag, fill'd with Air, which renders him capable of sustaining himself in what particular Part of the Water he sees most convenient for his Purpose. This Bag dilates the Fish, in some Measure, and makes some small Improvement to its natural Bulk, without any Addition to its Weight.

By this Means he possesses a larger Space than he would do without it, and this brings him to an equal Poise with that Body of Water whose Place he fills. Let us suppose the Fish, without his Bag, to weigh sixteen Ounces, and the Water, whose Place he occupies, to weigh fifteen only, the Fish must unavoidably descend. If, however, you afterwards supply the Fish with a small Bag of Air, which adds nothing to his Weight, but enlarges his Dimensions, so that the Mass of Water, whose Place he fills, weighs sixteen Ounces; the Fish will then be in an equal Poise with that Mass, and be supported in any Part of the River.

Now supposing the Fish to extend his Bag, he must enlarge the Dimensions of his Body, without the Addition of any Weight: And if he becomes lighter, he must consequently rise. On the contrary, should the Fish contract his Bag, he will decrease in his Dimensions, without any Diminution of his Weight; whereby he must become heavier than the Water whose Place he occupies, and unavoidably must sink. How improbable soever this Distention and Contraction may seem, they have been evinced by incontestable Demonstrations. This Bag of his, for the generality, has two small, but distinct Partitions: One, which is always equally full of Air, in order to keep the Fish in an equal Poise with the Mass of Water whose Place he fills: The other is dilated or contracted, to enable the Fish to become lighter

er or heavier, or, in other Terms, to rise or sink, as Occasion requires.

The Water abounds with Particles of Air, diffus'd through the Whole. What we generally call the Gills of a Fish, are a Sort of Lungs, which he opens for the Admission of Air, and which are formed with such a peculiar Mechanism, that they receive it without the least Intermixture of any Water. The Air indisputably flows into the Bag through them, and by Virtue thereof the Fish ascends: But when he is inclined to sink, he has nothing more to do than to contract his Bag; for the Air immediately re-ascends to the Gills, and has a free and uninterrupted Passage. The Fish thereupon sinks to the Bottom, and the Rapidity of his Descent is proportioned to the Quantity of Air that is ejected.

Every Kind of Fish has its Jaws framed for the taking in and macerating its particular Sort of Food. Such as feed upon Weeds and Insects, have seldom any Teeth; but such as prey upon other Fish, have one, two, or more Rows of Teeth, for the better grinding of their Nourishment; in which, as in all other Things, the Wisdom of Providence is manifest. The Back-bones of Fish, for the more easy bending of their Bodies, consist of very short Vertebræ, so joined, that their Tail and Head may be easily brought together; and their Scales, which in many Species are amazingly beautiful, are so regularly placed in Rows one over another, that they never ob-

struct their Motion. Some Kinds indeed have no Scales, which usually generate by Copulation, and bring forth their Young alive, and perfectly formed.

Besides the Arms of Defence which Nature has given some Fish, they have generally a remarkable Cunning in forming their Nests, for the Preservation of their Young. Of this there is no Instance more wonderful than the Tickle-back, one of the smallest of Fish. It is composed of little Fibres of Roots, so placed together, as to leave a hollow Tube in the Middle, for the repositing of the Spawn.

As to the Power of Sensation, Fish seem to enjoy it as perfectly as any other Sort of Animals. Their Sight, Taste, and Smelling, indeed, are not disputed; but many, who pretend to be curious Observers, deny them the Sense of Hearing. This, however, is an Error, as appears from Experiment: For if you use to feed Fish in a Pond at any particular Place, and practise them to some certain Call, they may be brought to come together at that Call, tho' you keep ever so much out of Sight. But this is the more likely to succeed, if you begin the Experiment when they are very young. Whence the contrary Opinion had its Rise I cannot determine; but the *Romans* were wiser in the Time of *Domitian* than to entertain it, as appears from this Epigram of *Martial* up on the Fish-ponds of that Emperor.

*Rash Angler, here thy guilty Sport forbear,
 These funny Natives are a Monarch's Care.
 The gentle Kind obey his known Command,
 And feed familiar from his sporting Hand :
 Each has his Name, which sev'rally they bear,
 And to their Owner's Summons strait appear.*

In fine, the Share of Life which some Fish possess, is worthy the Notice of every curious Angler. The Eel being cut in pieces, maintains Life and Motion for several Hours. A Carp will move vigorously some time after the Intestines are taken out of its Body : And even what is said of the Herring, that it never stirs when out of the Water, has been found on Trial to be sometimes false. But I shall say more on several of these Heads, in speaking of each particular Species of Fish, and therefore will conclude this Introduction ; which I hope has afforded the Reader some Profit as well as Delight, after turning his Thoughts to some other Topicks of Meditation, as they are enumerated by *J. Davors, Esq;* an old *English* Poet, whose Verses are preserved by *Mr. Walton*.

*Let me live harmlesly, and near the Brink
 Of Trent or Avon have a Dwelling-Place ;
 Where I may see my Quill or Cork down sink,
 With eager Bite of Perch, or Bleak, or Dace ;
 And on the World and my Creator think :
 Whilst some Men strive ill gotten Goods t' embrace ;*

*And others spend their Time in base Excess
Of Wine, or worse, in War and Wantonness.*

*Let them that list these Pastimes still pursue,
And on such pleasing Fancies feed their Fill,
So I the Fields and Meadows green may view,
And daily by fresh Rivers walk at will,
Among the Daisies and the Violets blue,
Red Hiacynth, and yellow Daffodil,
Purple Narcissus like the Morning Rays,
Pale Gandergrass, and azure Culverkeys.*

*I count it higher Pleasure to behold
The stately Compass of the lofty Sky,
And in the midst thereof (like burning Gold)
The flaming Chariot of the World's great Eye,
The watry Clouds that in the Air uproll'd,
With sundry Kinds of painted Colours fly ;
And fair Aurora lifting up her Head,
Still blushing, rise from old Tithonus' Bed.*

*The Hills and Mountains raised from the Plains,
The Plains extended level with the Ground,
The Ground divided into sundry Veins,
The Veins inclos'd with Rivers running round ;
These Rivers making Way thro' Nature's Chains,
With headlong Course into the Sea profound ;
The raging Sea, beneath the Vallies low,
Where Lakes, and Rills, and Rivulets do flow.*

*The lofty Woods, the Forests wide and long,
Adorn'd with Leaves and Branches fresh and
green,*

*In whose cool Bow'rs the Birds with many a Song,
Do welcome with their Choir the Summer's
Queen :*

*The Meadows fair, where Flora's Gifts among
Are intermixt, with verdant Grass between :*

*The silver-scaled Fish that softly swim
Within the sweet Brook's chrystal watry
Stream.*

*All these, and many more of his Creation
That made the Heav'ns, the Angler oft doth see ;
Taking therein no little Delectation,
To think how strange, how wonderful they be ;
Framing thereof an inward Contemplation,
To set his Heart from other Fancies free ;
And whilst he looks on these with joyful Eye,
His Mind is rapt above the starry Sky.*





T H E
British A N G L E R.

P A R T the F I R S T.
Containing the Angler's Apparatus.

C H A P. I.
Of A N G L I N G - R O D S.



E that would be an Angler, must carefully furnish himself with Variety of Rods, Lines, Hooks, Floats, Plummetts, Baits according to the Season and the Fish he angles for, and several other Appurtenances, which I shall mention in Order.

The

The Time to provide *Joints* for your *Rods* is near the Winter Solstice, if possible between the Middle of *November* and *Christmas-Day*, or at furthest between the End of *October* and the Beginning of *January*: The Sap continuing to descend till towards *November*, and beginning to rise again when *January* is over. The Stocks or Buts should be of Ground Hazle, Ground Ash, or Ground Willow; tho' very good ones are sometimes made of Juniper, Bay-tree, or Elder-Shoots. Stocks ought not to be above two or three Feet in Length, and every Joint beyond it should grow gradually taper to the End of the Top. Chuse the Wood that shoots directly from the Ground, and not from any Stump, because these latter are never so exactly shaped.

Hazle-tops are preferred to all others; and the next to them are Yew, Crab-tree, or Black-thorn. Some, indeed, use the Bambou Cane, and say it excels the best Hazle. But as the Hazle is freest from Knots, and of the finest natural Shape, it seems fittest for the Purpose. If they are a little warp'd, you may bring them strait at a Fire; and if they have any Knots or Excrescences, you must take them off with a sharp Knife: Tho', if possible, avoid gathering such as have either of those Defects.

When you have got a Quantity of Joints, bind them in Bundles, in the Middle of which put a strait Pole, to keep them from warping, and let them rest 15 Months, at least, before

34 *The* BRITISH ANGLER. P.I
used, that the Pith may be all consumed. If you want them sooner, place them upright in a Chimney, but not too near the Fire, nor for above 10 Days: Then boil them in a large Copper; straiten and dry them again; and in two or three Months they will be fit for Use. In the making up your Rods, observe these Directions.

For the *Ground Angle*, especially in muddy Waters, the Cane or Reed is preferred for a Stock. It should be 3 Yards and a half long, with a Top of Hazle, consisting of one, two, or three Pieces, all of them together two Yards, or one Yard and a half long at least, including the Whalebone. Your Rod will then be in all five Yards and a half or five Yards long, at least. The Stiffness of the Cane is helped by the Length and Strength of the Top, the pliant and regular Bending of which preserves the Line.

Having got an Hazle Top, made of your desired Length, cut off five or six Inches of the small End: Then piece neatly to the remaining Part, a small Piece of round, smooth, and taper Whalebone, of five or six Inches long, and whip it to the Hazle with strong Silk, well rubbed with the best Shoemaker's Wax. At the Top of the Whalebone whip a narrow, but strong Noose of Hair, with waxed Silk, to put your Line to.

For the *Fly-Angling*, or Running Line, in a clear Water for Trout, Grayling, or Salmon-Smelt, the Rod should be of several Pieces of
Hazle,

Hazle, and six Inches of Whalebone, all smooth, round, and taper; and so neatly bound together, with fine Wax Thread below, and Silk above, as to make it ply with a true Bent to the Hand.

But the neatest Rod is thus made: Get a white Deal, or Fir-board, thick, free from Knots and Frets, and seven or eight Foot long: Let a dextrous Joiner divide this with a Saw into several Breadths: Then, with his Planes, let him shoot them round, smooth, and Rush-grown, or taper. One of these will be seven or eight Foot of the Bottom of the Rod, all in one Piece: Fasten to it an Hazle of six or seven Foot long, proportioned to the Fir, and also Rush-grown. This Hazle may consist of two or three Pieces; to the Top of which fix a Piece of Yew, about two Foot long, made round, taper, and smooth; and to the Yew a Piece of small, round, and smooth Whalebone, five or six Inches long. This will be a curious Rod, if artificially worked: But be sure that the Deal for the Bottom be strong and round.

The Rod for Fly, and Running Worm, in a clear Water, must by no means be top-heavy; but very well mounted, and exactly proportionable, as well as slender and gentle at top: Otherwise it will neither cast well, strike readily, nor ply and bend equally, which will very much endanger the Line. Let both the Hazle and Yew Tops be free and clear from

from Knots, they will otherwise be often in Danger to break.

As the Whiteness of the Fir will scare away Fish, you must colour your Stock in this Manner: Warm the Fir at the Fire, when finished by the Joiner; and then, with a Feather dipped in *Aqua Fortis*, stroak it over, and with your Hand, chafe it into the Wood, which it will make of a pure Cinnamon Colour.

If you have a Mind to paint your Rod of an Ash-Colour, observe these Directions. Make a Size with Glue and Water, boiled together till the Glue is dissolved, and the Mixture of a Lye-Colour. Strike this over the Wood with a Brush or Pencil, while it is hot. When it is quite dry, take White-Lead, Red-Lead, and Lamp-black, in such Quantities as, when ground together with Linseed-Oil, produce the Colour you desire. Lay it on thin with a Brush, and this will not only serve for a Colour itself, but for the Ground of any other Colour. To instance in the Green: Take Pink and Verdigrisee, and grind them together in Linseed-Oil, as thin as you can, and then lay it smoothly on with your Brush. Once doing will serve after the Ground Colour, which must be thoroughly dry.

As to Canes, they may be made of what Hue you please, by covering them artfully with thin Leather or Parchment, dyed of the Colour you affect.

It is found very useful to have Rings or Eyes, made of fine Wire, and placed upon your
your

your Rod from one End to the other, in such a Manner as that when you lay your Eye to one, you may see through all the rest. Thro' these Rings your Line must run, which will be kept in a due Posture by that Means: And you must have a Winch, or Wheel, affixed to your Rod, about a Foot above the End, by which you may, if it should be proper, give Liberty to the Fish.

Rods for Roch, Dace, Tench, Chub, Bream, and Carp, should not have the Top so gentle as those for Fly, but pretty stiff, that so the Rod may exactly answer the Motion of the Hand: For Roch and Dace only nibble, and if you strike not in that very Moment, especially if you fish with Paste or any very tender Bait, you miss them; and a slender Top folds and bends with a sudden Jerk.

In a Time of Drought, steep your Rod in Water a little before you begin to angle. Fasten to the Top of your Rod, or Fin, with Shoemaker's Wax and Silk, a Noose or Loop of Hair, not large, but strong and very straight, to fix your Line to.

Your Length of Rod is generally to be governed by the Breadth of the River you angle in; but always use a Rod full as long as the River will bear; and if, though you angle in a small River, you constantly use a Rod five Yards and above long, you will experimentally find Advantages thereby.

Your Top for the Running Line must be always gentle, that the Fish may the more insensibly

38 *The* BRITISH ANGLER. P.I.
sensibly run away with the Bait, and not be
scared with the Stiffness of the Tackle.

To preserve Hazles, whether Stocks or
Tops, from Worm-eating or rotting, twice
or thrice in a Year, as you think fit, rub them
all over with Sallet-Oil, Tallow, or sweet
Butter, chafing it in with your Hand: But a-
bove all, keep them dry to prevent their rot-
ting, and not too near the Fire, lest they grow
brittle: And in the Spring, before you begin
to angle, steep them at least 12 Hours in
Water.

That the Reader may remember what has
been delivered in this Chapter concerning Rods,
I shall give him a Summary of it in Verse:
Which Method I shall observe throughout
this whole Book, having myself found great
Advantage from such Memorandum Verses.

*When now the Sun to Capricorn retreats,
And rural Hinds seek out the artful Heats,
Awhile th'approaching Winter-Blasts sustain:
The future Bliss will quit the present Pain.
Then tender Shoots from the old Hazle take,
Strait, smooth, and even, free from Knot or
Break.
Search all the Copp'ce, nor spare the fairest
Tree;
The loaded Roots you of their Burthen free.
Prune them, if notch'd; if crooked, make
them strait:
The Knife does this, a gentle Flame does that,
Then*

*Then let some Pole their fetter'd Bodies bear,
 And long preserve them with the utmost Care.
 Nor when you fit them for your Sport and Use,
 Slight Rules of Art, or any Pains refuse :*
*Joint fix'd on Joint, look with attentive Eyes,
 The taper Rod should in proportion rise.*

C H A P. II.

Of L I N E S.

I Come now to the Preparation of Lines, in which the following Rules are to be observed. Select not your Hair from lean or diseased Beasts, much less from those that are dead; but from a Stone-horse, that is fat, strong, and lusty, of four or five Years old, and, if possible, at the very Time of his covering a Mare. That which grows from the inmost and middle Part of his Dock, and so extends downwards to the Ground, is commonly the biggest and strongest Hair about the Horse, and better than that upon the upper Part of the Tail. Generally the best Horses have the best Hair.

Hair of a Sorrel, Chestnut, or Brown Colour, are best for Ground Angle, especially in muddy Water, they being not only the Colour of the Gravel or Sand, but of the Water itself. The white and grey, or dusky white Hair, is for clear Rivers and Waters. Your Hair thus suited is not discernable by the Fish, and consequently will
 not

not scare them from your Bait, if your Lines are but of a just and due Thickness.

Some use the pale watery Green, but not the deep Green, for Weedy Rivers in Summer. A Black may do well for Rivers that immediately flow from Mosses, and are thereby rendered very black.

It being impossible always to have natural Hair of a Colour suitable to the Season and Water, ingenious Anglers supply this Defect by dying it to their Minds. To make a *Brown*, boil Walnut-Leaves in Chamber-lye; or take Water, and dissolve some Alum in it; or mix strong Ale and Salt: In either of these soak the Hair well.

The Inner Bark of a Crab-Tree boiled in Water with some Alum, makes a pure *Yellow* Colour, which is good when the Weeds rot, for thereby the Line looks like the Weeds.

Another *Yellow* may be made with two Quarts of small Ale, and three Handfuls of Walnut Leaves stamped therein. Let the Hair remain till it is as deep as you desire it.

Tawny Hair is made with Lin and Water mixed together, by steeping for the Space of four or five Hours, and then soaking it a whole Day in a Tan-pit.

For a *Russet* Colour, take a Pint of strong Lec, half a Pound of Soot, a little Juice of Walnut Leaves, and a Quart of Alum: Put them all together in a Pan, and boil them well, and when the Liquor is cold, steep your Hair in it till it is as dark as you desire.

To

To make Hair *green*, take a Quart of Ale, and put into it a Pound of Alum: Then put in your Hair, and boil all together in a Pan softly for half an Hour: Then take out your Hair, and let it dry.—After this take two Quarts of fair Water, and put in it two Handfuls of Wax, covering the Pan with a Tile, and so boil it for half an Hour gently. When the Scum is yellow, put in your Hair, with half a Pound of powder'd Copperas, and let this too boil half an Hour; after which let it stand five or six Hours, and then take out the Hair and dry it.—This will make a fine Water Green, which you may heighten by adding more Copperas.

Another *Green* is thus made: Take a Pottle of Alum Water, a large Handful of Mari-gold Leaves, and boil them till a yellow Scum arise; then take half a Pound of green Copperas, and as much Verdigrreece; beat them to fine Powder, and having put those into the Alum Water, set all to cool: Then put in the Hair, and let it remain till it is deep enough coloured, perhaps about 12 Hours; then take it out, and lay it to dry. The longer you permit the Hair to be in it, it will be deeper coloured.

N. B. The Hair you use for dying should be the best White you can get. And in order to know the Seasons when these Colours are proper, observe; that as the Weeds rot away in the Autumnal Months, *September, October,* and *November*, the *Yellow* is then best. The

Ruffet

Ruffet serves all the Winter, and till the End of *April*, as well in Rivers as in Pools and Lakes : At the same Time the *Brown* should be used in blackish, and the *Tawny* in heathy and moorish Waters. The bright natural Hair is for the Summer Season.

When you get any Hair fit for your Purpose, immediately steep it 12 Hours in cold Spring Water : Then wash it very well from Dirt, without straining any of the Hairs ; and hang it up to dry 3 or 4 Days in a Kitchen, but not too near the Fire. When perfectly dry, put it in a Bag or Case, made of Parchment, or Paper ; which lay in a Box, or Desk placed in an upper Room.

You must furnish yourself with an Instrument for *twisting* your Lines : Then cut off near an Handful of the bottom Part of the Hair, which is generally weak, if not rotten. Turn the Top of one Hair to the Tail of another, which will cause every Part to be equally strong. When you make Lines, especially 4 or 5 of the lowermost Links, Lengths, Gildards, or Toughts, (for they are stil'd by all these Names in different Places) let them be of the best Hairs, such as are of equal Bigness, even, round, and clear, and free from Galls, Scabs, and Frets : For one such Hair will prove as strong as 3 uneven scabby Hairs, that are ill chosen, and full of Galls, or uneven ; the former commonly stretching or breaking altogether, which Hairs of an unequal Bigness never do, but snap singly, and betray the Angler

gler that relies on them. You may make the Top of your Line, and indeed all of it, except 2 Yards next the Hook, of a coarser Hair. Always let the Top of your Line, whether in muddy or clear Waters, be made of white Hair; because the Motion of the Line, when the Fish bite, will be far more discernible, than if they were either of black or brown Hair.

Never strain your Hairs before they are made into a Line, as some do; for then they will shrink, when used. The strongest and best are easily selected by the Eye.

To make the Line handsome, and to twist the Hair even and neat, gives it Strength: For if one Hair is long, and another short, the short one receiving no Strength from the long one, consequently breaks; and then the other, as too weak, breaks also. Therefore twist them slowly, and in twisting, keep them from entangling, which hinders their right plaiting or bedding together: Twist them neither too hard nor too slack, but even, so as they may twine one with another, and no more. Your Links may be tied to each other with a Fisher's Knot, or, as some call it, a Water-knot, which every Angler knows how to make.

The mixing Hair and Silk is no ways good for Lines: But if your Lines must be very strong, make them all of Hair, or all of Silk that is white; because white Silk is strongest, and will not rot so quickly as the coloured.

Having twisted your Links, lay them in cold Water for one Hour, and then twist them over again before you tie them into a Line : Otherwise a Hair or two will possibly shrink, and be shorter than the rest, at first fishing with it ; whence so much of the Strength of the Line is lost, for want of first watering, and then re-twisting it.

When you have tied your Lengths together with the *Water-Knot*, cut off the short Ends about the Breadth of a Straw from the Knot, that it may not undo in the using.

Do not arm, fix, or whip Hooks to any Line, either for Ground or Fly Angling, that consists of more than three or four Links, at the most : But if the Hair be long, and the lowermost Link consists of three Hairs, then you may whip to one that consists of two Links only. The Top of the uppermost Link having a small Loop, or Water-noose, you may fix it to any Line, and as easily remove it ; there being another Water-noose at the Bottom of your Line.

The Line for *Dub-fly*, *Cast-fly*, or *Artificial-fly*, should be about 3 Yards longer than the Rod, or almost twice the Length of it, if the River be not incumbered with Wood or Trees on its Banks : If so, let it be somewhat shorter, but still longer than the Rod ; and let the Hair be of a white, or darkish white Colour.

To angle for *Trouts*, *Graylings*, and *Salmon Smelts*, with the *Dub-fly* ; let the two first

first Links next the Hook be but of one Hair a-piece: But the Hair must be strong, and of the thick Ends only, and chosen for the Purpose. The next two Links of two Hairs, and next to these one of three Hairs; at the Top of which have a Water-noose, or Loop, to put your Line to; which lowermost Link consists of three Hairs, and has another Water-noose at Bottom, or Hook-link, to fix your Fly to. Then let two of the next Links of your Line be four Hairs, and so proceed, by increasing one or two Hairs till you come to six or seven Hairs at the Top. Let the single Hairs, or three or four of the next Links, be of a white, or darkish white Colour.

There are many indeed, who think this Line too small, especially where there are very large Trouts, and therefore for Cast-fly Angling, advise two of the first Links next the Hook to be of two Hairs a-piece, the next above them of three Hairs, to which have a Water-noose; then two of three Hairs a-piece, and then proceed with four, five, six, seven, and more, to the topmost Link. Others again, and good Anglers too, advise the two Links next the Hook to consist of three Hairs a-piece: Then one Link of four, at the Top of which to have a Water-noose: Then four, five, six, seven, eight, and so on to the topmost Link. And indeed, this Advice is not amiss, if the River abounds with large Trouts, and the Water either be clearing after

ter Rain, or swelled more than usually. Nay, it will even turn to Account in casting your Lines, especially the artificial Fly-line, if you make the uppermost Link or Gildard to consist of twelve or nine Hairs, with one or two Hairs less in the next Link, and so abate proportionably in every Link, till you come to the Hook. By this means any young Angler will cast a Fly well, and quickly become an accurate Artist ; and if he chances to fasten his Hook, and cannot come to loosen it, he will not lose above one Link, or two at most, though he pull to break it ; because the Line is so strong at the upper End. You may angle with stronger Lines at the Cast-fly than at Ground, in a clear Water for the Trout. For in a clear Water at Ground for Trouts, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts, never use a Line made otherwise than with a single Hair at Hook, and so on as above directed ; only never have above four Hairs in any one Link of the Line.

Your Lines being thus made, the Rod and Line will be in a manner taper, from the very Hand to the Hook, and the Line will fall much better and straiter, and cast your Fly or Bait to any certain Place your Hand or Eye shall direct, with less Weight and Violence than otherwise, and so neither circle the Water, nor fright away the Fish.

The *Running Worm Line*, in a clear Water, for Trouts, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts, should be usually two Yards shorter than the Rod,

Rod, altho' an equal Length, and sometimes even a greater, may in some Rivers and Seasons be more proper: As for Instance, the Line longer than the Rod, when the Water is exceeding bright and low, is best. For Thickness, let the two or three lowermost Links be one Hair a-peice, and no Part of it above four or five Hairs in Thickness, in any one Link. Let the Hair be of a white, or rather a dusky white Colour.

For the *Running Worm* in muddy Water, the three lowermost Links, at least, should be of chesnut, brown, or sorrel Colour, and from the Hook upwards, the Thickness of the Line may increase in the largest Proportions.

The Line for *Float Angling* should be of the strongest Sort, and as long or rather longer than the Rod for Rivers; but shorter than the Rod for Ponds, Pits, Mears, and standing Waters. The Colour of the three or four lowermost Links, should be agreeable to the Colour of the Water; that is, a chesnut, sorrel, or brown, for a muddy Water; but a dark white, or grey, for clear Rivers.

The *Dibbing Line* should be of the same Length and Thickness as the Line for *Running Worm*, in a muddy Water; or it may be a Hair or two thicker, because little of the Line comes into the Water. In this Way of Angling you may expect the biggest Fish; and wanting Length to give him Line, after he is struck, you must be forced to tug for it: Yet sometimes this Line may be as long as the
Rod,

Rod, or near it, if a gentle Wind blow from the Bank you stand on.

Many, for the *Ground Angle*, make their Links of three Hairs to consist of two sorrel, brown, or chefnut Colour, and one white; or two white, and one chefnut, sorrel, or brown Hair; both which do very well.

At the Bottom of every Line have a small Water-noose, or Loop, that you may hang on a Hook of any Size, whip'd to a Line, consisting of two or three Links; or change your Hook, and two or three of your lowermost Links, as often as you please. If it be a Line of one Hair next the Hook, let the Noose be at a Link of three Hairs: If a Line of three Hairs next the Hook, let the Noose be at a Link consisting of four Hairs.

Let the *Trowling Line* be made of four or six Twines of Linnen Yarn, finely spun of the best Hemp or Flax, and let the Folds be neatly twisted together. Its Length shall be 20 or 30 Yards, with three Yards, next the Hook of strong white Silk neatly made. Some use green or sky-colour'd Silk, and others make the *Trowling Line* all of Silk, either green or sky-colour'd.

The *Barbel* and *Chub Lines* must be very strong, seven Hairs at least next the Hook, and twelve at the Top of the Line. Some use a Line of white, others of green or sky-colour'd Silk. Others again use *Indian Grass* next to the Hook, which should be chosen round and full, without Flaw or Blemish.

I have been thus particular in my Directions concerning Lines, because it is a Matter of the utmost Consequence to an Angler, and what is seldom sufficiently understood. Not that I think it necessary to be so very exact as some are, who prescribe a certain Number of Hairs for every Species of Fish, as if either a Hair more or less would ruin the Sport: (For the small *Roach*, the *Bleak*, the *Gudgeon*, or the *Ruff*, they order one Hair only; for *Dace*, or large *Roach*, three Hairs; for *Perch*, *Flounder*, or small *Bream*, four Hairs; for small *Chub*, *Carp*, *Tench*, or *Eel*, six Hairs; for *Barbel*, large *Trout*, and large *Bream*, nine Hairs; for *Salmon*, twelve or fifteen Hairs:) I would only have him to act with such Regard to these Proportions as the Season, the Place, and his own Judgment may direct, which after a little Experience he will find no Difficulty in doing. The following Verses contain only the principal Rules, which ought never to be forgot.

*Chuse well your Hair, and know the vig'rous
Horse*

Not only reigns in Beauty, but in Force.

Reject the Hair of Beasts, ev'n newly, dead,

Where all the Springs of Nature are decay'd.

*But when the rampant Brute with Vigour
flies,*

To force the tim'rous Mare to genial Joys,

Obtain your Wish, and glory in the Prize.

*Then for your single Links the fairest chuse ;
 (Such single Hairs will best supply your Use)
 And of the Rest your sev'ral Lines prepare,
 In all still less'ning ev'ry Link a Hair.*

*If for the Fly, be long and slight your Line ;
 The Fish is quick, and hates what is not fine :
 If for the Deep, to stronger we advise ;
 Tho' still the Finest takes the Finest Prize.*

*Before you twist your upper Links, take care,
 Wisely to match in Length and Strength your
 Hair.*

*Twist slow your Links, and see they plait with
 Ease*

*Hair best with Hair, and Silk with Silk a-
 greees ;*

But mix'd, have both great Inconveniencies.

C H A P. III.

*Of Hooks, Floats, Plummetts, Landing-Lines
 and Landing Nets, with other Utensils.*

THE *Wire* of Hooks should be small,
 and so well tempered as not to stretch :
 The Points so hard, as not to be easily blunt-
 ed in the Water. I know not whether it
 may be worth while to give Directions for
 making them, since very good ones of all
 Sorts may be purchased at a moderate Price.
 However, as this Book may come into the
 Hands of some who have not always the Con-
 veniency of sending for them to Town, and
 of

of others who may out of Choice wish to amuse them in preparing all their own Tackle, I will just observe, that in order to make a good Hook, there are requisite a *Hammer*, a *Knife*, a Pair of *Pincers*, an *Iron Semi-cleam*, a *File*, a *Wrest*, a *Bender*, *Tongs* both long and short, an *Anvil*, and *Steel Needles* of different Sizes.

Heat a Needle of the Size you want in a Charcoal Fire, and raise the Beard with your Knife, and then let it cool. Sharpen the Point either with a File, or on a Grind-stone; and then put it into the Fire again, and bend it into what Shape you please: Make the upper Part of the Shank four-square, and file the Edges smooth: Then put it into the Fire a third Time, and give it a gentle red Heat; whence taking it out suddenly, and plunging it into Water, your Operation is finished.

The Directions which follow are equally useful, whether you buy your Hooks or make them yourself.

Let the *Hooks* be long in the Shank, and of a Compass inclining to Roundness; but the Point must stand even and strait, and the Bending must be in the Shank: For if the Shank be strait, the Point will hang outward; and tho', when set on it, may stand right; yet after the taking of a few Fish, it will cause the Hair at the End of the Shank to stand bent, and consequently the Point of the Hook to hang directly upwards.

Whether you angle at Top or at Bottom, proportion your Hooks for Strength and Compass to the Number of Hairs you angle with next your Hook ; and use not a small Hook to great Baits, nor a great Hook to small Baits. *Barbels* and *Chubs* must have large Hooks ; but *Pearches*, *Carp*s, *Tench*es, *Bream*s, and *Eels*, Hooks of a considerably less Size. *Trouts* in clear Waters, and *Graylings*, *Salmon Smelts*, *Roaches*, *Dace*, *Ruffs*, and *Gudgeons*, must be angled for with small Hooks : And tho' many use great Hooks for *Trouts*, in muddy Waters especially, yet it is not so sure a Way as to angle with small ones ; and Experience will convince one of its Inconveniencies. The great *Salmon*, however, must have a large and strong Hook.

When you set on your Hook (which is called by the several Terms of *arming*, *fixing*, or *whipping*) do it with small but strong Silk, well rubbed with Shoemakers Wax. If for a small Hook, use the Silk single ; if for a large one, double and twist it. Lay your Hair or Grass on the Inside of the Hook ; for, if it comes on the Outside, the Silk will be apt to cut and fret it asunder ; and it is not so convenient to strike Fish : And to avoid the fretting of the Hair by the Hook on the Inside, smooth all the Shank on a Whetstone. From a Straw's breadth below the Top of the Hook, wrap the Silk about the bare Shank, until you come to the Top of it : Then lay your Line on the Inside, and whip with your Silk downwards,
till

till you come almost to the Bent of the Hook, and then fasten it by turning over three or four Times, and drawing it close; which done, cut off the End of the Gildard or Link as nigh as you can to the Twist.

Tho' perhaps the Colour of the Silk you whip with is not very material, yet it may not be amiss when you angle with Worms, to use red Silk; but for Paste, Cod-bait, and other whitish Baits, to use white. Some do it with a white or red coloured Hair, and some with Flax or Hemp: But strong and small Silk is undoubtedly the best.

How to arm a bristled Hook we shall see hereafter, when we discourse of Cod-baits. And as to Hooks for the Dub-fly, they generally should be small, and the same for Cod-bait; but larger for Worms, tho' not so large as some practise, especially in clear Water.

Floats for rapid Rivers should be of Cork; Quills not being able to bear up against strong Streams; but then they are best for Pits, Ponds, Mears, and standing Waters, and angling near the Top in very slow Rivers, especially with Pastes or tender Baits.

Having procured a Piece of the best Cork you can, without Flaws or Holes, bore it through with a small hot Iron; then put into it a Quill of a proper Proportion, neither so large to split it, nor so small to slip out, but such as may stick in very closely: Then, either with a sharp Pen-knife or a Razor, pare the Cork into the Form of a Pyramid, small Pear,

Egg, or Nutmeg, making it of what Bigness you please: Then, upon a small Grind-stone, or with a Pumice-Stone, smooth and make it complete; for you cannot pare it so smooth as you may rub or grind it. Have always Floats of every Size, from a Pea to a large Walnut, which you may suit to the Water, the Size of your Line, or the Fish you angle for.

Some advise the Boring of a Cork after it is shaped; but I think it much safer to do it before, both because the Cork will be then less apt to split, and because it may be better proportioned to the central Hole. After it is shaped, cut the Quill off even with the Cork at each End, and thro' the Quill draw the Line, fastening them both together with a Wedge of the uppermost hard End of the Goose Quill, the Feather being stripped off. A very nice Angler, indeed, may do with Quills only, in almost all Waters, dyeing the Caps at the Top, with Red, Green, &c. Place the smaller End of the Cork towards the Hook, and the bigger towards the Rod, that the smaller End sinking down with the Hook, the bigger may float aloft, and bear the Wedge directly erect; which, when pulled under the Surface of the Water, is the certain Signal of the Fish's biting, unless by Accident the Hook or Line become entangled, or stopped by some Stone, Piece of Wood, or Weeds.

Cork

Cork in the Form of a Nutmeg or Egg, being biggeſt in the Middle, and ſmall at each End, is a little apter to ſink, and will not carry ſo weighty a Plummet of Lead: Yet on clear Bottoms, and angling with the Bait ſome Diſtance from the Ground, and in ſlow running Rivers, it will do very well, and better than others.

Furniſh yourſelf with Corks and Quills of all Sizes, and let the Cork be ſo poized with Lead, on the Line, that the Quill which is in it, being about two Inches long, will ſwim upright, and that the leaſt Bite or Nibble will ſink the Cork.

When a Float is ſplit or bruifed, there is no Remedy for the Miſchance but getting a new one; only you may ſave the Wooden Plug with the Braſs Wire at the End of it, and it will ſerve for another. But if the Water get in at the Top of your Float, that Defect may be amended with a little Sealing-wax. If the Plug of your Float be looſe, pull it out, or if it come out itſelf, in either of theſe Caſes, faſten it in with one of the following Cements.

Take *Bees Wax* bruifed ſmall, *Chalk* ſcraped fine, and *black Roſin* powdered, of each an equal Quantity: Melt them in a Spoon, or any ſmall Tin Veſſel, and ſee they are well mixed.

Or, Take *Brick-duſt* ſifted very fine, and common *Raſin* pulveriſed: Put one Part of

Brick-dust to two Parts of *Rosin*, and melt them as before directed. Dip your Plug in either of these, and put your Float immediately upon it, because the Cement cools in an Instant.

When you join two Floats together, let the Plug be a little thicker in the Middle than at the Ends, which Ends are to go into the Mouths of the Quills. Dip one End in the Cement, and put one Quill upon it; then do the like by the other, and you have a double Float.—Or you make it by dipping the Ends of both Quills, when prepared, in the Cement, and fixing them together, which, when the Cement is cold, will be very strong.

To dye Quills red, which for still Waters are better than any other Floats, take what Quantity you please of *Urine*, and put in it as much Powder of *Brazil Wood* as will make it redden a Piece of white Paper: Then take some fair Water, in which put a Handful of *Salt*, and a little *Argol*, and stir them till dissolved; then boil them well in a Sauce-pan. When the Water is cold, scrape your Quills, and let them lie a little in it: Then steep them in the redden'd *Urine* for ten or twelve Days, and having dried them, rub them with a Linnen Cloth.

For *Leading of Lines*, the small round Pellet or Lead-shot is best, especially for stony Rivers, and the Running Line. Let it be cloven, and neatly closed about your Line.

Put

Put not above two Plumbs on the Line at once, an Inch and half, or two Inches distant from one another, and the lowermost about seven or eight Inches distant from the Hook, for a Running Line, but nine or ten Inches off the Hook for a Float Line. But if the River run on a sandy Bottom, and be full of Weeds, with few Stones, Leaden Plumbs in the Shape of a Barley Corn, or of an oval Form, are best, the Ends being smooth and close laid down, either for a muddy Water or Float Angling. Many, when they angle amongst Weeds, place their Lead on the Shank of the Hook, and believe it then not so apt to entangle.

When you angle with the Running Line, let the Line have more Lead in a troublesome rough Water than in a Stream that is calmer and quieter; as near as may be, so much as will sink the Bait to the Bottom, and permit it to be kept in Motion, by continually rolling on the Ground, and no more. This Rule is to be observed in Float Angling in Rivers. Some cover the Lead on their Lines with Shoe-maker's Wax, as thin as may be.

As the Day advances, your Pellet or Plumb may be lesser; for that will sometimes carry readily at five o'Clock in the Morning at Running Line, which will sink and fasten the Line at nine o'Clock; because in Droughts Rivers generally abate, as the Heat increases.

When you angle in a very stony River that is clear, with the Running Line, the Stones are apt to rub the Pellets bright, which scares away the Fish : When it does so, remove the bright Lead, and put on other that is black.

For a *Lead Plummet*, make a Hole in a Pistol Bullet, and put therein a strong twisted Thread ; and, when Occasion is, hang this on the Hook, to try the Depth of the River, or Pond, especially when you angle with the Float, and the Bait is to be near the Bottom, or but just touch it.

Prudent Anglers procure a little *Whetstone*, about two Inches long, and one Quarter of an Inch square, which is far better to sharpen Hooks on than a File, tho' never so fine or good : For the File either will not touch a well-temper'd Hook, or leave it rough, but not sharp.

Tho' the Angler is not confined to any particular Form for his *Line Cases*, yet the following is thought as convenient as any. Get a Case made of red Leather, with twelve or fourteen Partitions therein, made of the finest thin Parchment, and a Flap to cover over the Edges, to prevent the losing any Thing out of them. In the several Partitions keep Hooks ready whipt to Lines of two or three Gildards in Length, and ready leaded : Likewise, spare Links, Lines of all Lengths or Sorts, Silk of all Sorts and Colours, and single strong Hairs. These Cases lie in a small Room in the
Pocket,

Pocket, and yet in one of them you may put all your Tackle ready fixed for the Running Line in a muddy or a clear Water; in another, all the Tackling for Ground Angling with the Float; in another, which must be large, the angling Tackle for great Fish, as Chub, Barbel, great Salmon; in another, your angling Tackle for Pike, which must likewise be very large: So that when you travel from Home, you may angle any where for most Sorts of Fish at Ground, if you carry with you but a good Rod made of Hazle, and the Pieces put into each other, which will serve you also for a Walking-staff.

Provide *Bags* of Linnen and Woollen, to keep and carry all Sorts of Baits in; also a Piece of Cane, with Holes bored therein, to keep Caterpillars, Palmers, Woolbeds, natural Flies, Bobs, or any Sort of Insects; a Horn for Gentles; Boxes of divers Sizes, to carry Hooks, Silk, Lead, Thread, Corks, Quills, Shoemaker's Wax, and Dub-flies in: Also have a neat and sharp Pen-knife. The following is esteemed the best way to carry and keep Cod-baits, Caterpillars, Clap-baits, natural Flies, and Oak-worm; because to give Cod-baits Water is soon to rot them. Cut a round Bough of fine green bark'd Withy, or Willow, about half the Thickness of one's Arm, and taking the Bark clear of, about a Foot in length, turn both Ends together from the Middle, and let the Sides fold within each other; then tie it with a String on the

the Top, and stop it with a Cork or Piece of Wood: In this put your Baits, and at Night lay it in the Grass, where let it lie till you have occasion for them. The Dew preserves them, and makes them scour and thrive; and the Moisture of the Bark contributes much to their Preservation; yet it is convenient to bore small Holes in it for their better Perspiration, tho' the Bark of itself be very porous.

It is proper to carry a light *Pannier* or Basket, made on Purpose for the Use, and neatly worked.

Have always ready a small long *Pole*, with a Loop at the End, like a Water-noose, to which fasten a small *Net* to land great Fish, without which you will be in Danger of losing them: But if you angle for Pike, Barbel, Chevin, or great Salmon, get a large Hook called a *Landing Hook*, with a Screw at the End to fix into a Socket at the End of your Pole, in order to strike into the Mouth or any Part of the Fish, and so draw them to Land. You may also fit to the same Socket and Pole two other Hooks, one sharp to cut Weeds away, the other to pull out Wood.

Not to be tedious on this Head, I will sum up the Angler's Materials in a few Lines, which the young Sportsman may always have in his Memory.

Hooks, Plummetts, Floats, *and* Penknife you
must get,
 Bags, Panniers, Landing-Hook, *and* Land-
 ing Net;
 Your Whetstone, Line-Case, Boxes, Gentle-
 Horn,
 Links, Hairs, *and* Thread, *and* Silk that
may adorn,
 All ready over-night, lest you forget at Morn.

C H A P. IV.

*Of natural Baits ; particularly of Earth-worms,
 Caterpillars, Grubs, Cadews, and Gentles.*

THE first Observation I shall make upon
natural Baits, is that *Earth-worms* are
 good for all Sorts of Fish, and that they and
Gentles continue in Season the whole Year.
 The *Earth-bob* is in Season from the Beginning
 of *November* till almost *May-Day*; and the
Cow-turd-bob, or *Clap-bait*, from *May-Day*
 till *Michaelmas*. *Flies*, *Palmers*, or *Wool-*
beds, *Caterpillars*, *Cod-baits*, and *Worms* bred
 on Herbs, Plants, or Trees, continue good
 all the Summer. When one Sort of Bait
 comes in Season, you ought not however to
 think the preceding altogether uselefs; therefore
 when you angle at Ground in clear Water, have
 both *Earth-worms*, *Cod-bait*, *Gentles*, and *Bobs*
 in Readiness with you, and in more Likeli-
 hood Success will attend your Labours. But
 if

if you angle for Trouts in a muddy Water with Running Line, you need only take *Brandlings*, *Gilt-tails*, *Tag-tails*, and *Meadow-worms* with you. If the three last are not to be easily got, then *Brandlings* only: And you may have some scoured in Moss and Water only; others, as will be directed, with Ruddle, and others with Grave Earth: For sometimes the Trout takes the Worm kept one Way, and sometimes the other; and that all on the same Day, and in two Hours Space.

I now come to the several Species of *Worms*, of which there are divers Sorts: Some bred in the Earth, and therefore called *Earth-worms*, or *Worms* simply, without any Addition; such are the *Dew-worm*, *Red-worm*, *Brandling*, *Gilt-tail*, *Tag-tail*, and *Meadow-worm*: Others are bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees; as *Palmer* or *Woolbed*, *Caterpillars*, *Oak-worm*, and *Cabbage* or *Colewort-worm*: Others on Excrements, or in dead Flesh, as *Gentles*, *Wasps*, &c. of all which in their Order.

Dew-worm, *Garden-worm*, *Lob-worm*, or *Twatckel*, are but different Names for one and the same Worm, according to the Dialects of several Places. It is the principal Worm for *Salmon*, *Chevins*, *Trouts*, *Barbels*, and *Eels* of the largest Size; but for smaller Fish, though of the same Species, not so proper. Some of them are called *Squirrel-tails*, which have a red Head, a Streak down the Back, and a broad Tail; and these are esteemed the best, because they are toughest

toughest, most lively, and live longest in the Water: For with a dead Worm, in all probability, you will catch little or nothing. This Worm is most certainly found in a Garden, Field, by a Path Side, or in a Church-yard, late in a Summer's Evening, with a Lanthorn: Or in great Drougths, pound Walnut-Leaves, and put the Juice thereof, mixed with a little Salt Water, into their Holes, or upon the Ground where they use to rise, and it drives them out upon the Surface.

Brandlings, *Gilt-tails*, and *Red-worms*, are the principal Worms for all Sorts of Fish, and are generally to be found in old Dunghills, or some very rotten Earth that lies near them; but usually in Cow-dung or Hogs-dung rather than Horse-dung, which is somewhat too hot and dry for them. The best, however, are to be found in Tanner's Bark, which they cast up in Heaps after they have used it about their Leather. These, especially the two first, are the prime Worms Anglers use for *Trouts*, *Grayling*, *Salmon-Smelts*, *Gudgeon*, *Perch*, *Tench*, and *Bream*; which three last take the *Red-worm*, well-scoured, exceeding well. The *Brandlings* and *Gilt-tails* are taken by *Trouts* and *Graylings* both in muddy and clear Waters; but the *Red-worm* best in muddy Waters. Some say the *Brandling* is the best Worm for a *Trout*; and others the *Gilt-tail*: But if you angle with two Worms at once, as is generally used for *Trouts* in muddy Waters,

64 *The* BRITISH ANGLER. P.I.
Waters, put both a *Brandling* and a *Gilt-tail* on the Hook together, but the *Gilt-tail* last.

The *Marsh* or *Meadow-worm* is got out of Marsh-ground, or the fertile Banks of Rivers. It is a little blewish, and should be well scoured, in order to render it both tough and sprightly. It is a choice Worm in *March*, *April*, and *September*, for *Trouts*, *Salmon-Smelts*, *Gudgeon*, *Grayling*, *Flounder*, *Bream*, and *Perch*; and some will constantly use it from *Candlemas* till *Michaelmas*, and prefer it before either *Brandling* or *Gilt-tail*. It requires more Time to be well-scoured in than either of these latter, and should be kept in Moss and Water fifteen Days at least, before used.

Tag-tails are of the Colour of a Man's Hand, or a pale Flesh Colour, with a yellow Tag on their Tail, almost half an Inch long: They are found in Marly Lands or Meadows, after a Shower of Rain, or in a Morning in Weather that is calm and not cold, chiefly in *March* and *April*. There are Anglers who affirm, that there is not a better Bait in the World for a *Trout*, if you angle with them whilst the Water is discoloured by Rain: Some commend it likewise for a *Grayling*. This Worm will not endure long scouring; whereas the *Dew-worm*, *Red-worm*, and *Meadow-worm*, will bear more scouring than any of the other Sorts before-mentioned, and are the better for long keeping.

To

To order, keep, and scour *Worms* of every Sort, put them into very good long Moss: Whether white, red, or green, is not very material; but the soft white Moss that grows on some Heaths is accounted best, only it is difficult to be found in many Countries. The next in Goodness is what grows on the Buck-thorn. Wash your Moss well, and cleanse it from all Earth and Filth, wringing it very dry: Then put your Moss and Worms into an Earthen Pot, which cover close, that they crawl not out: Set the Pot in a cool Place in Summer, and in Winter in a warm Place, that the Frost may not destroy them. Every fourth Day in Summer change the Moss, and once a Week in the Winter; or, at least, let the Moss be taken from them, and clean washed in fresh Spring Water, and squeezed again betwixt your Hands till it be pretty dry, and then you may put it to them again. The longer you keep them, especially the *Lob-worm*, *Marsh-worm*, and *Red-worm*, before you use them, the better. Some mingle Camomile or Fennel with the Moss, and not improperly. The scouring Worms well makes them redder, clearer, tougher, sprightlier, longer-lived on the Hook, and consequently more desirable to the Fish. If you are in haste for your Worms, a little *Bole-Armoniack* put to them will further your Desire, and make them scour in a short Time: Or you may put the *Dew-worm*, or *Red-worm*, three or four

Hours

Hours in Water, and they will scour themselves, but be very weak, which a few Hours in good Moss will recover.

Observe when the Knot near the Middle of the *Brandling* begins to swell, for then he is sick, and if not well looked to, is near Death: To prevent which, you may feed them with Crumbs of Bread and Milk, or fine Flour and Milk, or the Yolk of an Egg and sweet Cream coagulated over the Fire: Give them a little at a Time, and often.

If you want to have your *Brandlings* and *Gilt-tails* quickly scoured, put them into Moss that is exceeding wet, and it will answer your Purpose, but not keep them long. But when you go to angle, remove them into Moss, out of which the Water is very well wrung, or squeezed.

Some wet their Moss very well in *sweet Milk*, or, which is far better, *Ale-wort*, in which there has been no Hops, and then squeeze it pretty well, and Over-night put in the Worms they intend to use the next Day: But the Worms must not continue long in the Moss thus wetted in Milk or Alewort, in regard it will greatly swell, and in twenty-four Hours spoil them. However, if you put them in fresh Moss and Water when you have finished your Day's Angling, it will revive and recover them again.

Others, perhaps a little superstitiously, keep them in *Moss*, intermingled with *Earth* cast out of a *Grave*. The less Time the Party

Party hath been buried, say they, the better: And they put them into fresh Moss, with some of this Earth, when they go to angle. Others again, in the Spring, and for a muddy Water, shave Ruddle or red Oker, (with which Country People mark their Sheep) into the Moss they keep their Worms in, and sometimes those Baits will be taken eagerly, when the brighter, which are kept in Moss and Water only, will not be taken at all: And perhaps within an Hour again the bright ones will be taken, and the ruddled Worms refused. Since all Ways therefore are here noted for the keeping and ordering your Worms, chuse that Way which Experience assures you to be the best: Only this you may observe, that if you can otherwise help it, never have your Brandlings or Gilt-tails kept in Moss, having the Water well squeezed out of it, less than 48 Hours, or above ten Days.

There is yet another Way of *cleansing* and *preserving* Worms, recommended by modern Anglers, and found extremely good for every Kind of them, except the *Lob-worm*. It is only this: Take a Piece of very coarse Cloth, which has never been shrunk in the Fulling-Mill, wash it very clean, and let it dry: Then soak it in the Liquor which a Piece of fat fresh Beef has been boiled in, and wring it out, but not so hard, as to press out all the Liquor. Then lay it in a deep Earthen Pan, which has a large Bottom, and put your Worms thereon, that they may crawl in and
out,

out, and so scour themselves. When they have remained there twenty-four Hours, wash out your Cloth, as before, but do not dry it; and then wet it again with some of the same Liquor, and having placed your Worms thereon, keep them in a close Cellar. Repeat this every other Day during the Heat of Summer, and you will not only preserve your Worms alive for three Weeks or a Month, but make them very red and tough. When you take out any for angling, put them into Moss that has been well washed, and not wrung dry; and when you come home at Night, put them again into your Pan, by which they will recover themselves, and gather fresh Strength. Be sure that there is no Salt in your Beef Liquor; for if there be, it will certainly purge your Worms to Death.

I proceed now to the *Palmer-worm*, *Palmer-fly*, *Wool-bed*, or *Canker*, which are all one Worm, bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees, and if not a perfect Caterpillar, is certainly a Species of it. These are rough and woolly on the outward Parts, whence they have the Name of *Wool-beds*. They are good Baits either for *Trout*, *Chub*, *Grayling*, *Roach*, or *Dace*. *Palmer-fly* and *May-fly* are the very Foundation of all Fly-Angling.

Caterpillars, *Oak-worm*, *Cabbage-worm*, *Colewort-worm* or *Grub*, *Crabtree-worm* or *Jack*, are all bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees, and may be kept with the Leaves of those Trees, Herbs, or Plants on which they are bred, by renewing the said Leaves often in a Day.

Day. The Boxes they are kept in should have a few small Holes bored in them, to let in Air; but you may keep them best in withy Bark, as directed in Chap. III. These are good Baits for *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Trout*. Fish bite much better at the Oak-worm, or any Worm bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees, if you angle when they shew themselves on the Top of the Water, as with the natural Fly, than if you use it at Midwater or Ground: For when a Gale of Wind shakes the Trees, the Worms fall into the Water, and presently rise and float on the Top, where the Fish spring at them as at Flies. They never sink, till being tost and beaten by the Waves, they die and lose their native Colour, and then the Fish, as you may perceive by those on your Hook, value them not. But though these Sort of Baits are taken by *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Chub* at the Top of the Water, yet you may angle 18 Inches, or lower, within the Water, with good Success. For a *Trout* you may put one on the Point of a Dub-fly-Hook, and dib with it, or with the Ash-fly and one of these together. The *Oak-worm* is a very good Bait, of a fine Colour, and in Ponds is a Murderer of *Roach* and *Dace*. To get these Baits, beat on an *Oak*, *Crab-tree*, or *Hawthorn*, that grows over an Highway or bare Place, and when they fall upon the smooth Ground, you may gather them up; or go to Cabbages or Coleworts, and there hunt for them carefully.

It has been a general Notion, that the *Palmer-worm*, or *Caterpillar*, and others of this Kind,

Kind, are bred from a Dew left on the Leaves of Trees, Herbs, Plants, or Flowers, which being condensed by the Sun's generative Heat, in three Days become living Creatures, of several Shapes and Colours : But this is evidently a Mistake, they being bred of the Spawn of their particular Species, which, in Time, turn to be Butter-flies of various Kinds. Indeed all Flies, tho' bred of Eggs or Seed, receive Life, or vivify, as the Sun's Heat furthers or disposes the seminal Virtue to Animation : But none of them will ever be produced by that Heat, in a Place where the Eggs were not before disposed.

Bobs are of two Sorts. The First is found in mellow, heathy, sandy, light Soils, and gathered after the Plow when the Land is first broke up from Grazing. This is called the *Earth-bob*, *White-grub*, or *White-bait*. It is a Worm as big as two Magots, hath a red Head, and is all soft, and full of whitish Guts. You may easily discover in what Grounds they most are ; for there the Crows will be watching, and follow the Plow very close : Or you yourself may dig one Spade-graft deep in sandy, heathy Ground, that has lain long fallow from the Blow, and find a sufficient Quantity of them. These are a choice Bait from the Beginning of *November* until after the Middle of *April*, for *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Salmon Smelts*, *Trout*, *Bream*, *Tench*, and *Carp*.

When you gather these, put them into a Pot or Firkin, with some of the Soil they were

were bred in, to preserve them: Then stop the Vessel exceeding close, or all will spoil. Set them where neither Wind nor Frost may in the least offend them, and they will keep all the Winter for your Use, so that you may always be ready furnished.

Some, in the Morning they go to angle, boil those they intend to use that Day in Milk or Water, one or two Minutes, and then pour them on a Sieve to strain off the Liquid; but they will not keep after boiling above two Days. In like Manner you may boil the *young Brood of Wasps, Hornets, Humble Bees, &c.* and they will become something the tougher, and look more plump and white on the Hook. Others put these Baits in a little *Earth and Honey*, the Day before they angle with them: For *Carp or Bream*, into a Box with *Gum-Ivy*.

Cow-turd-bob, or *Clap-bait*, the other Sort of Bob, is found under a Cow-turd, from about *May-day* until *Michaelmas*. It is an excellent Bait for *Trout*, if you angle with it as Cod-bait is used, on the Top of the Water with a bristled Hook; only you may sometimes put a Pair of artificial Wings and Head, such as is used for the Dub-fly, on the Top of the Hook. This Bait is almost like a Gentle, but bigger, and is kept in wet Moss, but not above three or four Days. Therefore if you would preserve it longer, have recourse to your *Withy Bark*, as you are directed for a Cod-bait, at Chap. 3.

Fish of all Sorts likewise take the *Clap-bait* within the Water, as the *Trout*, *Salmon Smelt*, *Grayling*, *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Carp*, *Bream*, *Tench*, &c. For *Trout* and *Salmon Smelt*, you may imitate it with yellow *Bees-wax*, and angle on the Surface; having an artificial or *Dub-head*, and *Wings* at the Top of the *Hook*.

There are divers Sorts of *Cod-baits*, *Cadews*, or *Cafe-worms*, which are to be found in several particular Counties, and in little Brooks that have Communication with larger Rivers. The first I shall mention is called a *Piper*, whose Husk or Cafe is a Piece of *Reed* about an Inch long, or somewhat more, and as big round as the Compass of a *Silver Two-pence*. These Worms being kept three or four Days in a *Woollen bag*, with *Sand* at the Bottom of it, and the Bag wet once a Day, will turn yellow, and become a choice Bait for the *Chub* or *Chavender*, or indeed for any great Fish.

The lesser *Cadews-worm*, called a *Cock-spur*, being in Shape like the Spur of a *Cock*, sharp at one End, hath a Cafe made of small Husks, *Gravel*, and *Slime*, most curiously intermixed. This is good Bait for any *Float Fish*, being much less than the *Piper-Cadews*; but must be ordered in the same Manner, and may be preserved ten, fifteen, or twenty Days, and sometimes longer.

The *Straw-worm*, or *Ruff-coat*, is another Kind of *Cadews*, whose House is made of little Pieces of Bents, Rushes, Straws, and Water-weeds, and so knit together with condensed Slime, that they stick about her not unlike the Bristles of a Hedge-hog. This *Cadews*, as well as the two former, is commonly taken in the Beginning of Summer, and is good to take any Kind of Fish, with Float or otherwise. But in order to know the several Kinds of *Cadews*, and to what Flies every particular Species turns, and then how to use them first as *Cadews*, and afterwards as *Flies*, is an Art that every one who professes to be an Angler has not leisure to search after, and if he had, is not capable of learning. I shall only observe therefore in general of the Rest, that as several Countries have their several Kinds, so they are all usually bred in the little Rills or Ditches that run into larger Rivers, and are a more proper Bait for those very Rivers, than any other.

In short, one Kind of *Cadews* are bred under Stones that lie a little hollow in shallow Rivers, or small Brooks: These are *yellow*, when ripe; and are the best Sort of Cod-bait. Others are found in Pits, Ponds, slow-running Rivers, or Ditches. Both these Sorts are excellent Baits for *Trouts*, *Graylings*, and most Sorts of Fish; as *Carp*, *Tench*, *Bream*, *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Salmon Smelts*, and *Bleak*. The *green* Sort breed in Pits, Ponds, and Ditches, and are found in *March*,

before the yellow ones come: The other yellow Sort come in *May*, or the End of *April*, and are out of Season in *July*: A third Sort, but smaller, come in again in *August*.

These *Cod-baits* cannot endure the Wind and Cold: Therefore keep them in a thick Woollen Bag, with some moist Gravel or Sand amongst them, got out of the same River, or Brook, which the *Cod-baits* you get were bred in. Wet them once a Day if in the House, but oftner in hot Weather. When you carry them abroad, fill the Bag full of Water, and then hold the Mouth close, that they drop not out, while the Water runs from them. Thus they have been kept three Weeks. Or, you may put them in an earthen Pot full of Water, with some of the Gravel they were bred in at the Bottom, and take them from thence into your Bag as you have Occasion to use them. But the best Way of keeping them is in the Withy Bark, as before directed in Chap 3. To which I will only add, that some are so dextrous in making their Case of Bark, as to leave one End of it closed up by a Piece of its own Wood, and to make a Stopper for the other End with another Piece of the same.

One may angle *several Ways* with *Cod-baits*; either at Bottom with a Float, or within a Foot of the Bottom at Mid-water, or at Top: But if in a clear Water for the *Trout*, *Grayling*, or *Salmon Smelt*, use fine and small Lines, never above one Hair for two or three Lengths

Lengths next the Hook. Your Lines are to be almost the Length of your Rod, and very light leaded, if you angle within the Water. Sometimes, when you use a Float, you may put on two or three together; and frequently a *Cod-bait*, to very good Effect, is joined with a *Worm*, and sometimes with an *Artificial Fly*, to cover the Point of the Hook. At other times it is put on the Point of a Hook after an *Oak-fly*, and then they dib with it; or, which is better, let them sink nine or ten Inches within the Water, continually raising, and gently moving it up and down, both within the Water, and at the Top. Some say *Cod-bait*, when used by itself, is always to be angled with at the Bottom, and with the finest Tackle; and that it is for all Times of the Year the most lasting of all Baits whatever, both for *Trout*, *Salmon Smelt*, and *Grayling*. Others affirm that the best way to angle with the *Cod-bait*, is to fish with it on the Top of the Water, for *Trout*, *Grayling*, or *Salmon Smelt*, as you do with the *Fly*; and that it must stand on the Shank of the Hook, like the *Artificial Fly*; because if it comes into the Bent of the Hook, the Fish will not value it, nor if you pull the blue Gut out of it. To make it keep that Place, you must, when you whip your Hook, fasten a stiff Horse-hair, or Hog's-bristle, under the Silk, with the End standing out about a Straw's Breadth at the Head of the Hook, from under the Silk, and pointing towards the Line. This, by the

way, is called a *bristled Hook*, and will keep the Bait either from slipping totally off, or from sliding back into the Bent of the Hook, by which means your whipping would be left naked: To remedy which, when it so falls out, some always whip the Hook they design for this Bait with the whitest Horse-hair, which itself will shine like the Bait, and consequently do more good, or less harm, than whipping with Silk, or Hair of any other Colour. Thus used, it is an excellent Bait for a *Trout*, *Salmon Smelt*, or *Grayling*. You may, if you please, place a small slender *Lead* upon the Shank of the Hook, to sink the Bait, and draw the *Cod-bait* over the Lead. You may also angle with a *Cod-bait* as with a *Dub-fly*, if you put on the very Top of the Shank of the Hook, a Pair of artificial Wings, and a little below, a Bristle, to keep up the Bait from slipping back.

There are some that prepare, for *Trouts* and *Salmon Smelts*, an *Artificial Cod-bait*, by making the Body of yellow Bees-wax, and the Head of black Dubbing and black Silk: Or, you may do it by making the Body of yellow Wash-leather, or rather Shammy, or Stuff, and the Head of black Silk.

Others make the *Counterfeit Cod-bait* of yellow Bees-wax, with an artificial black dubb'd Head, and a Pair of Wings at the Head, and angle with it as at the *Dub-fly*. If you imitate the *Cod-bait* artificially, it is an incomparable Bait for *Trouts* and *Salmon Smelts*. These
you

you may often let sink to the Bottom; and immediately raise them again to the Top. Some melt yellow Bees-wax, and therein dip yellow Crewel often, and then wrap the Crewel about the Shank of the Hook, and put a Head on: And others make Use of a Piece of small yellow Wax-candle, to imitate the *Cod-bait*, and put a dubb'd Head and Wings on the Top of the Hook.

Those *Cod-baits* that are *natural*, are most excellent Baits for *Trouts*, *Graylings*, *Salmon Smelts*, *Chubs*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Perch*, *Carp*, *Tench*, *Ruff*, *Bream*, and *Bleak*; but the *artificial Cod-bait* is for *Trouts* and *Salmon Smelts* only. *Note*, That *Trouts* take the *Cod-bait* in *clear Waters* only.

Cod-baits, when they are full ripe, turn into *Flies* of several Sorts, especially into the *Green-drake*, &c.

The *Bark-worm*, or *Ash grub*, which are Names for one and the same Insect, is plump, milk white, bent round from Head to Tail, and exceeding tender, with a red Head, resembling a young Dore, or Humble-bee. It is in Season all the Year, especially from *Michaelmas* till the Middle of *May* or *June*. It is the most proper Bait of any, except only the *Fly* and *Cod-bait*, for the *Grayling*; and *Chub*, *Roach*, and *Dace* will likewise take it.

You may find it under the Bark of an *Oak*, *Ash*, *Alder*, or *Birch*, especially if they lie a

Year or more after they are fallen. It is likewise found in the Body of a rotted *Alder*, if you break it with an Ax : But be careful only to shiver the Tree in pieces with beating, so as crush not the Worm. Lastly, you may find it under the Bark of the Stump of any Tree, when decayed.

The *Bark-worm* is very tender, and therefore to be baited on such a *bristled Hook* as before is directed for the *Cod-bait*. The Hook should be put in under the Head or Chaps of the Bait, and guided down the Middle of the Belly, without suffering it to start out by the Way, till the Point comes so low, that the Head of the Bait may stick on the Bristle that comes out to hold it ; by which means it neither slip off itself, nor will the Force of the Stream, nor sudden pulling it out on any Mistake, strip it off. If the Hook once comes thro', there will issue out *Water* and *Milk*, till nothing but the Skin remain, and the Bent of the Hook will appear black thro' it. This Bait is usually kept in Wheat-bran, and thereby grows tougher.

For *Grayling* you are to angle with this Bait, with the smallest Lines, such as are directed for a *Trout*, with a Running Line in a clear Water. You are always to use a Float, and the least Weight of Lead you can, that the Swiftness of the Stream will allow ; and your Bait is to be always seven or eight Inches from the Bottom. But for other Fish, as *Chub*, *Roach*,
and

and *Dace*, you may use Lines and Tackle proper for them, and angle as is suitable for their Humour.

The *Flag-worm*, or *Dock-worm*, may be found thus: Go to an old Pond or Pit, where there are Plenty of *Flags* or *Sedges*; pull them up by the Roots; then shake those Roots in the Water, till all the Mud and Dirt is washed away from them, and then, amongst the small Strings or Fibres that grow to the Roots, you will find little *Husks* or *Cases* of a reddish or yellowish, and sometimes of other Colours: Open these carefully with a Pin, and in them lies a little *Worm*, pale, yellow, or as white as a *Gentle*, but longer and slenderer, with Rows of Feet all down his Belly, and a red Head. This is an exceeding good Bait for *Graylings*, *Tench*, *Bream*, *Carp*, *Roach*, and *Dace*. It may, upon Occasion, do well likewise for *Chub*, *Bleak*, and *Perch*.

If you pull the *Flags* asunder, and cut open the round *Stalk*, you will find another *Worm* like the former in the *Husk*, but tougher, and in that Respect better. Both these *Worms* are to be kept in *Wheat-bran*, and baited on the *bristled Hook*, as the *Ash-grub*; and when you angle for *Graylings* with them, use a *Float*, and the smallest *Lines*, and let the Bait be eight or nine Inches from the Ground. A *Trout* rarely takes either *Ash-grub*, or *Flag-worm*.

Gentles, or *Maggots*, are kept with dead *Flesh*, *Beasts Liver*, or *Suet*: Or, which is better,

better you may both keep and scour them in Meal or Wheat-bran. In order to breed them, prick a *Beast's Liver* full of Holes; hang it in the Sun in Summer-Time, and set under it an old Barrel, or small Firkin, with Clay and Bran in it; into which they will drop, and cleanse themselves, and be always ready for Use. In this Manner Gentles may be produced till *Michaelmas*: But if you would fish with them from *Michaelmas* to *May-Day*, you must get a dead *Cat*, *Kite*, or other *Carrion*, at the latter End of *September*, and let it be Fly-blown; and when the *Gentles* begin to be alive and stir, bury it and them together in moist Earth, deep in the Ground, that the Frost may neither kill nor injure them, and they will serve for Use till *March* and *April* following, about which Time they turn to be *Flesh-flies*.

Gentles are sometimes added to a *Worm*, and sometimes put on the Point of a *Dub-fly Hook* for *Salmon-Smelts*; but most commonly they are used by themselves, frequently two or three on a Hook at a Time. When you go to fish with *Gentles*, you may put them in a Horn, wherein there are small Holes bored to let in Air, either with some *Wheat-bran* only, or a few Shavings of a Barber's *sweet Wash-ball* among the Bran: But the best Way is to put them the Day you angle in a Box with some *Gum-Ivy*, and you will find it of no small Effect.

Others

Others anoint their *Gentle-Horn* with *Honey* ; and others again perfume it with *Musk* and *Civet*. You may imitate a *Gentle* with white *Fersey Wool*, if you are desirous to join it to another *Bait* for *Salmon-Smelts*, when you angle at top for them.

Gentles are excellent good Baits for *Roach*, *Dace*, *Chub*, *Carp*, *Tench*, *Barbel*, *Bream*, and *Bleak* ; and in some Rivers and Seasons, if the Water be clear, even a *Gudgeon* or *Trout* will take them.

As it would be tedious to recapitulate in *Verse* all that may be said of the several Kinds of *Baits*, I shall content myself with the following Directions concerning some of the principal Species in this and the remaining Chapters of the *first Part* of this Book. They are extracted chiefly from the *Piscatory Eclogues* of Mr. *Moses Browne*, to whom I shall have other Obligations in the Course of my Work.

*If, Anglers, while the Summer Sports persuade,
You hope your Toils with kindly Hours repaid,
With mingling Threads be artful Flies design'd,
And chuse, of various Sorts, the native Kind ;
From sedgy Brooks the husky Cadews bear,
And from the Sord the bedded Worm prepare ;
Or watch where Wasps their Infant Brood
display,*

*And from the Hives the stingless Young convey :
Nor less may in the blended Choice avail,
To board th' Autumnal Bee, and dewy Snail :*

*For oft' invited by the varied Bait,
The heedless Fish are lur'd to tempt their Fate ;
Whether in Depths retir'd secure they lie,
Or leap, expos'd, to snatch the plunging Fly.*

*But, if in wintry Hours you rather chuse,
By lonely Floods the bending Reed to use,
Observe in Autumn, when the lab'ring Swain
The yielding Green-ford plows, or sandy Plain ;
If Crows in Troops attend the passing Share,
Pursue the Track, and eye the Turfs with Care :
A Worm within the parted Clods you'll find,
Of whitish Hue, the Beetle's early Kind :
Of these be careful in your Stores to place,
A Food delicious to the wat'ry Race :
Or, bury'd deep, with Eggs prolific stor'd,
Preserve the Carrion-Cat, of Gentles a sure
Hoard.*

C H A P. V.

*A Continuation of natural Baits ; particularly
Blood, Grain, Fish, and Fish-Spawn, Fruits,
Flies, and other Insects.*

THE Variety of natural Baits made use of in Angling, and the Manners of using them are almost infinite, and therefore much must be left to Experience in treating of this Subject. However, as I have already been very copious upon the Vermicular and Caterpillar Kinds, I shall in this Chapter enumerate all the other Sorts commonly known, and more than

than ever were tried by any one Angler; reserving only the Pastes and Ointments to be treated of by themselves.

To make a Bait with *Sheep's-Blood* you must dry it in the Air upon a Board or Trencher, till it becomes pretty hard: Then cut it into small Pieces, proportioned to the Size of the Hook. Some add a little Salt to it; which keeps it from growing black. This is a good Bait for *Chub*, *Roach*, and *Dace*, if rightly ordered.

When you use any Sort of *Grain*, as *Wheat* or *Malt*, boil it soft in *Milk*, or, which is liked better, in *Sweet-wort*, and peel off the outward *Rind*, which is the *Bran*. It is then fit for Use; though some afterwards, and indeed not without Reason, fry it in *Honey* and *Milk*, or steep it in some strong-scented Oils, as *Amber*, *Spike*, *Polypody*, *Ivy*, *Annise*, *Turpentine*, or Oil of *Peter*. *Grain* is a good Bait, either in Winter or Summer, for *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Bleak*. That Fish can smell, few or none doubt; but what Sort of Smells they most delight in, is the great Question, that is not yet perfectly decided, nor can be any otherways than by long Experience, and the Trial of various odoriferous Oils.

The *Ant-fly* is most plentiful in the End of *June*, *July*, *August*, and most of *September*. During that Season, go to the *Ant-hills* or *Mole-hills*, where they breed, and take a great Handful of the *Earth*, with as much of the Roots of the *Grass* that grows on those Hills:

locks: Put all into a large Glass *Bottle*, and then gather a great Quantity of the blackest Ant-flies, handling their Bodies and Wings tenderly, as not in the least to bruise them: Put them into your *Bottle* (or into a *Firkin*, if you would keep them long) first washed with *Honey*, or *Water* and *Honey*. These, in any Stream and clear *Water*, are a mortal Bait for *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Chub*; and you must angle with them under the *Water*, no less than a Handful from the Bottom.

Take an *Ant-fly* or *May-fly*, and sink him with a little *Lead* to the Bottom, near the Piles of a Bridge, Posts of a Wier or Flood-gate, or any other deep Place, where *Roaches* lie quietly, and then pull your Fly up very leisurely, and usually a *Roach* will follow your Bait to the very Top of the *Water*, and gaze on it there, and then run at it eagerly, lest the Fly escape him. Perhaps any other Fly may have the same Effect, but I have tried only these. The *Ant-fly* may be kept alive, as is before directed, two or three Months. Ant-flies are not always of the very same Colour, some being *blackish*, others *reddish*, and others of other Hues.

It will be no unpleasant Digression in this Place, to make a few Observations on that *small*, but naturally *wise*, *industrious*, and *politick* Creature, the *Ant*, or *Pismire*, of which our Ant-fly is bred. It is observed to gather its Food in Summer, in the Full, and to rest in the New Moons. They live together like

a *Commonwealth*. When they gather Grain, they dry and bite it at both Ends, that it may not grow. They wear away Stones by their Affiduity, and make beaten Roadways. They help one another in drawing their Burdens, damming out Water, and burying their Dead. The Greater lead the Way, and the Lesser drag the Corn: And, when dirty, they cleanse themselves before they enter into their Habitations. They teach the Young to labour, but expel the Idle and Slothful: And when they move their Stores, it is said to be a Sign of foul Weather. They cast up the Earth over the Mouth of their Caves, that the Water may not enter them. In these Habitations they have three Cells; in the one they live, in another they breed and bury, and in the third they keep their Corn. They generate in Winter, and bring forth Eggs, which, in the Spring, are Ants. When old, they grow winged, and then suddenly after die.

To angle with the *young Brood of Wasps, Hornets, and Humble-bees*, you must dry them on a Fire-shovel or *Tile-stone*, in an Oven that has cooled after baking. To avoid their being burned, lay them on a thin Board or Chip, and cover them with another, so supported as not to crush them. This Way they will keep long, and stick on the Hook well. If you boil them a Minute or two in Water or Milk, they grow black in three or four Days, but are good for present Use. These are singular good *Baits* for *Roach, Dace, Chub, Eel, Bream, Flounder;*
and

and you may try them for *Carp*, *Tench*, *Barbel* and *Bleak*, which will seldom refuse them. Some use *Wasps*, *Hornets*, and *Humble-bees*, when their Legs and Wings are a very little grown forth, especially for the *Chub*.

According to an old Angler, the *Sting* of *Hornets* (which must sometimes be expected) is cured by *Venice Treacle* taken inwardly, and applying outwardly *Cow-Dung* and *Fasting Spittle*. The *Sting* of *Wasps* is worse than that of *Bees*, and is cured by the Application of *Cow-Dung* mixed with *Barley-meal*, or *Leaven* mixed with *Oil* and *Vinegar*. The old *Hornets* and *Wasps* only can sting, and frequently do so when their Nests are taken; but the young *Brood* of them, which are for the *Baits*, are not capable to do any Injury.

Salmon-Spawn, a very good Bait for *Chub*, and in some Rivers for *Trouts*. The common Way of using it, is to take the *Spawn*, and boil it so hard as to stick on the Hook, though some use it without boiling it at all. Others put a good Quantity of Salt to their *Spawn*, and hang it in a Linnen Bag, in the Kitchen, far from the Fire, where it will become hard; and then they steep it the Night before it is used in some spirituous Liquor. Some preserve *Salmon Spawn*, by laying it upon *Wool*, in a Pot, one Layer of *Spawn* and another of *Wool*. It is a lovely Bait for the Winter and Spring, especially if used where *Salmons* use to spawn; for
thither

thither the Fish are gathered, and there expect it.

The *Minnow*, *Loach*, and *Bull-head*, are Baits for the *Pike*, the *Perch*, the *Chub*, the *Eel*, and the *great Trout*. The *Trout* takes these Baits about a Foot within the Water, and sometimes lower in the Deeps, in the Day-time, in *March*, *April*, and *September*, when the Wind is in the South, West, or South-west, and blows strongly, curling the Waters. In Summer Months, from the Middle of *April* till the End of *August*, he will not take them in the Day-time, unless the Weather be dark, and the Wind high and blustering; and then you must add some Lead to the Line, and sink these Baits to the Bottom. But in the Night, at Night-Hooks, he takes them freely from the Beginning of *March* till *Michaelmas*. *Pike*, *Perch*, and *Chub*, will take them either by Day or Night; only the *Chub* values them not so much in the Day as the Night, in the four hot Months of *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*. But both *Pike*, *Perch*, *Chub*, *Trout*, and *Eel*, take them exceeding well in the Night, at Night-Hooks, from the Beginning of *March* till after *Michaelmas*. *Minnows* of a middle Size, and whitish, are the best. But though *Minnows* are good Baits, yet Experience assures us, that a small *Loach* or *Bull-head*, his Gill Fins being cut off, are better than *Minnows* by many Degrees. When you angle with *Minnow*, *small Loach* or *Bull-head*,
for

for *Trout*, be sure that the Bait turn quick, and be always in Motion, and in a clear Water, for which we shall give Directions in its proper Place.

Lamprey, *Pride*, or *Seven-Eyes*, are like small Eels, no thicker than a Straw, and may be found in sandy muddy Heaps, near the Side of Rivers, almost as easily as Worms in a Dunghill. They are good Baits, either by Night or Day, for *Chubs* and *Eels*, and so are likewise the small *Brood of Eels* for *Chubs*.

Both the white and the black *Snail*, his Belly being slit, that the white may appear, are good Baits for the *Chub*, very early in the Morning; but in the Heat of the Day he cares not for them. *Trouts* and *Eels* will likewise take them at the Night-hook.

The *Grafshopper* is a Creature having no *Mouth*, only a *Pipe* in the Breast to suck in Dew, of which it is supposed to live. The Antients used to eat them. There are two, if not three Sorts of them, alike in Shape, but differing in Colour: The one is *green coloured*, the other *dun*, and the third of a *yellowish green* on the Body. They are principally found in green Meadows and Grass; and Fish take them best in the latter End of *June*, all *July*, and *August*. The middle-sized are best; but you must cut off their Legs and outward Wings. For *Trout* or *Grayling* you may lead your Hook on the Shank, with a Plate of Lead, made narrowest and slenderest at the Bent of the Hook, that the Bait may come over it;
then

then draw him over the Lead; after put a lesser *Grasshopper* or a *Cod-bait* on the Point, and keep your Bait in continual Motion, lifting it up, and sinking it again. A *Chub* will likewise take this Bait very well.

There are some Anglers who with good Success use only the Tail, or half of the *Grasshopper*, putting on the Hook first a young *Beetle*, or *Sharn-bud*, which is found in a Cow-turd of a Day or two old. If you take off the higher and hard Wings, she puts forth a long Pair, coloured like those of the *Pad-fly*. This, in a close Water, and which breeds a large *Trout*, is as killing a Bait as any whatever: But it is not so good in a shallow, very clear, and open River. You may dib with a *Grasshopper*, either for *Chub* or *Trout*. The green *Grasshopper* is generally used.

The *House-cricket*, a winged Insect, like a *Grasshopper*, that lives in Chimneys and warm Places, and sings almost continually, is said by some to be a good Bait for *Chubs*, if you dib with it, or permit it to sink within the Water.

Water-cricket, *Water-louse*, or *Creeper*, which are all one, are excellent good for a *Trout*, in *March* and *April*, or sometimes in *May* in some Rivers. They are found under Stones that lie hollow in the Water, and you may fish with them within half a Foot or a Foot of the Bottom. Others let their Bait drag on the Ground; and other good Anglers affirm, that if you dabble with it in the Streams
about

about Noon, on a Sun-shiny Day, two or three Hours in the Month of *April*, for *Trouts*, it will prove a murdering Bait. 'Tis always to be used in a clear Water, and is to be found only in very stony Rivers, not in those that calmly glide on Sand, and champaign Grounds. These *Creepers* always turn into *Stone-flies* about *May-Day*.

Lip-berries, *Aron-berries*, or *Berries* of *Cuckow-Pints*, or *Wake-Robin*, *Berries* proceeding from the Herb *Aron*, and are ripe and fit for Use in *July* and *August*. They are of a lovely transparent red, or Orange Colour. They are good Baits for *Roach* and *Chub*, especially the latter. Any Apothecary or Herb-woman will shew you the Herb in *May*, and you must look for the *Berries* or Fruit in *July* and *August*. You may put four or five on the Hook at a Time for the *Chub*.

Cherries, *Rasberries*, *Blackberries*, and *Mulberries*, are all Baits for *Chubs*, which will take them best in Ponds or Rivers where such Trees grow near the Water, and such Fruit frequently drop into them. Sometimes a *Carp* will take them.

Oat-cake, or *Cheese*, are good Baits to angle with for *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Barbel*, when you use a ledger Bait. Your *Cheese* may be kept a Day or two (if it be not new, which it ought to be) in a wet Linnen Cloth, or steeped a little in *Honey*.

When

When you would keep *Baits* for the *Pike*, or *Night-books*, such as small *Roach*, *Dace*, *Gudgeon*, *Bleak*, *Loach*, *Salmon-Smelt*, *Minnow*, *Smelt*, small *Trout*, small *Perch*, and small *Eels*, carry them in *Wheat-bran*, which will dry up the slimy Moisture that is on them, and so preserve them longer, and cause them to stick more firm on the *Hook*. Besides, there is a green watery Humour that issues out of Fish, which will infect and rot them; but the Bran dries it up, and prevents that Mischief.

Oak-fly, *Ash-fly*, or *Woodcock-fly*, an Insect called by all these Names in different Places, is a very good Fly from the Beginning of *May* till the End of *August*. It is of a brownish Hue, and found on the Body of an *Oak* or *Ash*. It stands frequently with the Head downwards, towards the Root of the Tree. It is very proper for a *Trout*; and the Way to use it, is to put one on the *Hook* length-ways, and sometimes two, or to follow the Direction for baiting the *May-fly* for dibbing, which see. If you put it on length-ways, fix a *Cod-bait* at the Point of the *Hook*, and let them sink six Inches or a Foot into the Water; and then raise them again gently, having a short dibbing Line, and it will prove a fatal Bait for a *Trout* in clear Water. Sometimes instead of a *Cod-bait* use an *Oak-worm*, or *green Grub*, got off of an *Haw-thorn*.

There are several Sorts of *May-flies*, which indeed are the Foundation of all *Fly-Angling*; but

but the *Green-drake* and *Stone-fly* have the Pre-eminence.

The *Green-drake* is taken both in Streams and still Waters, at all Hours of the Day, while in Season; the *Stone-fly* chiefly in the Morning and Evening.

The *Green-drake*, when at full Maturity, has high Wings, closed exactly upon his Back, like the *Butter-fly*, which he also resembles in his Motion. His Body is yellow, sometimes paler and sometimes darker, ribbed with Rows of green, long and slender, and growing sharp towards the Tail; at the End of which he hath three long small Whisks, of a very dark Colour. This Tail turns up towards his Back, like a *Mallard's*, whence he has the Name of *Green-drake*. He comes in usually about the Middle of *May*, and is in Season till *Midsummer*: Though his Time of coming in and going out is sometimes sooner or later in different Years.

The *Stone-fly* lies under hollow Stones, at the River-side. His Body is long and pretty thick, and almost as broad at the Tail as in the Middle. He is of a fine brown Colour, ribbed with yellow, which predominates more on his Belly than on his Back. He hath two or three Whisks at the End of his Tail, and two little Horns on his Head. His Wings, when full-grown, are double, and flat down his Back, near the same Colour, but rather darker than his Body. He seldom flies, but often

often swims and paddles with several Feet he has under his Belly : Whereas the *Drake* will mount very high in the Air.

The *Stone-fly* comes in Season about the Middle of *April*, and continues till *Midsummer* or the End of *June*. He is more proper for Streams than still Waters, except when there is a brisk Wind. You may angle with him within Water, at Bottom, or near it ; or at Mid-water, if you pull off his Wings ; and he is sometimes best taken in this Manner.

The *yellow May-fly* and *Gray-drake* are shaped like the *Green-drake*, and the *Camblet-fly* resembles a Moth. They are all good in the same Season.

The *Hawthorn-fly* is black, and to be found on every *Hawthorn-bush*, soon after the Leaves are sprung forth. It is used for dibbing in some Rivers for *Trouts*.

If you pull out the *Eyes* of those Fish you catch, and put them on the Hook, they are an excellent Bait for most Sorts of Fish : The like is remarked of *Fish-Livers*.

The yellowish bright *Frogs* that are found in *June* and *July*, in green Meadows, are good Baits for *Chubs*, *Pikes*, and *Perches*. Put your Hook through the Skin of the Leg, towards the upper Part of it. Use a small *Frog* for *Perch* and *Chub*.

The *great Moth* has a very large Head, not unlike to an *Owl*, with whitish Wings, and a yellowish Body. You may find them flying

flying out in Summer Evenings, in Gardens, when some Wind is stirring. This Fly the *Chub* delights in very much, and you are to dabble with it.

Fat Bacon is affirm'd by some to be a very good Bait for *Chub* and *Pike*, at *Snap* especially, in the Winter Months, that is, from the End of *August*, till the Beginning of *April*.

The *Earwig* is a good Bait for *Salmon Smelts*. They are to be got by laying a white Linnen Cloth, or a Cow's Hoof, in a Garden Hedge, a Night or two : Use them within the Water, near the Bottom.

The *black Bee* is a great black Insect, that breeds in Clay Walls, and is good for the *Chub*. Some cut off his Legs and upper Wings.

Fern-fly, or *Fern-bud*, is a thick short Fly, to be found on Fern, from about *May-day*, till the End of *August*, or later. This Fly hath a thick short Body, and two Pair of Wings ; the uppermost are hard and red on one Side ; but the undermost are tender, diaphanous, and blackish. We often take off the uppermost Wings, and dabble with this Fly. A *Trout* will take it about ten Days together, in some Part of *May* ; but the *Chub* takes them all the Summer.

Pith, or *Marrow*, in an *Ox*, *Cow*, *Calf*, or *Sheep's Back-bone*, is used by some Anglers. They advise you to be very tender in taking off the tough outward Skin of that in an *Ox* or *Cow's Back-bone* ; but to be sure you leave the inward white

white Skin safe and untouched, or your Labour is lost. This, they affirm, is an excellent Bait for a *Chub* all the Winter long: And so is the Brains of an Ox or Cow, either for Winter or Summer. The aforesaid Pith is also a good Bait for Eels at Night Hook.

Fish take all Sorts of *Baits* most eagerly and freely, and with the least Suspicion, when you present them in such Order and Manner as Nature affords them, or as the Fish themselves usually take them. Some are peculiar to certain Countries and Rivers, of which every Angler may in his own Place make his proper Observation. Several of the foregoing Baits will be taken in some particular Rivers, and not in others; and the same Baits are taken earlier in some Rivers than others, and sooner or later in some Years than others, according to the Quality and Season of the Year. *Ground-baits* in general are indeed useful and certain almost in every River; but it is otherwise with the *Fly*, which varies in Colour, Kind, Shape, or Proportion, almost in every River, nay, in the very same River, at five or six Miles distance.

In the River *Thames* Anglers for *Roach* use a *Perriwinkle*, which they gather in Shells. They break the Shells, and take the Perriwinkle whole. *Shrimps* taken out of the Shell are good Baits for *Pike* and *Chub*. The white *Blite* with much Seed, by some called *All-Seed*, is a very acceptable Bait to Fish, say some Authors.

Let all the *Baits* for the *Pike* be alive the same Morning you use them ; for, if they are stale, and not sweet, he refuses them.

I have done with this Chapter, after giving in Verse one general Rule for the baiting with *Natural Flies*.

*To fish with nat'ral Flies whene'er you chuse,
Observe the Season, and provide for Use :
Observe the Fish, as round for Prey they rove,
And take your Baits where best they seem to love.
For search all Nature, and this Truth you'll
find,
Variety, that Mistress of Mankind,
Is not to Species, nor to Sex confin'd.*

C H A P. VI.

Of Pastes and Unguents.

PA S T E S are a Species of artificial Baits, to be angled with at Ground or within the Water. There are, or may be, as many distinct Sorts of them as the Luxuriancy of every Fancy will suggest ; but the subsequent are in the highest Esteem.

Take *Bean-flour*, or, if that be not to be got, *Wheat-flour*, and the tenderest Part of the Leg of a young *Rabbit*, *Whelp*, or *Kitten* ; as much *Virgins-Wax* and *Sheep-Suet* : Beat them in a *Mortar* till they are perfectly incorporated ; then, with a little clarified *Honey*, temper them before the *Fire* into a *Paste*.
Some

Some omit the *Bean* and *Wheat-flour*, others the *Virgins-wax* and *Sheep Suet*, only when they use it for *Carps*.

With *Crumbs* of *White-bread* and *Honey* alone, you may make, with clean *Hands*, a *Paste* for *Carp* and *Tench*.

And of the same *Crumbs* with only a little *Water*, you may make a *Paste* for *Roach* and *Dace*.

For *Barbel* in *August*, beat *Mutton Kidney Suet* and soft new *Cheese* into a *Paste*.

Take the strongest *Cheese* pounded in a *Mortar*, with so much *Butter* and *Saffron*, as being beaten small will turn it to a *Lemon Colour*, and make a *Paste* for *Chubs* in the *Winter*.

Take *Sheep's Blood*, *Cheese*, fine *White-bread* and clarified *Honey*: Make all into a *Paste*.

Take *Cherries* without *Stones*, *Sheeps Blood*, fine *Bread*, and *Saffron* to colour it with, and make a *Paste*.

Take fat old *Cheese*, strong *Rennet*, *Mutton Kidney Suet*, *Wheat-flour*, and *Anniseed-water*; beat them all into a *Paste*. If it be for *Chub*, add some roasted *Bacon*.

Take the fattest old *Cheese*, the strongest *Rennet*, *Mutton Kidney Suet*, and *Turmeric* reduced into a fine *Powder*; work all into a *Paste*. Add the *Turmeric* only till the *Paste* become of a very fine yellow *Colour*. This is excellent for *Chub*, as are also the two following.

Take some of the *oldest* and *strongest* *Cheshire Cheese* you can get, the Crumb of a fine *Manchet*, or *French Roll*, and some *Sheep's Kidney Suet*: Put these in a Mortar, and beat them into a *Paste*, adding as much clarified *Honey* as will be sufficient to sweeten it.

Take a few *Shrimps* or *Prawns*, pull off their *Shells* and *Skins*, and beat the *clear Meat* in a Mortar, with a little *Honey*, till it becomes a *Paste*. When you bait with a Piece of this, let the Point of the Hook be but lightly covered.

Take fine *Flour* and *Butter*, with *Saffron* to colour it, and make a *Paste* for *Roach* and *Dace*.

But among all the Variety of *Pastes*, there is none so often used as that simple and plain one made with *White-bread* and *Milk*, which requires only clean Hands.

The following *Observations* concerning *Pastes*, may be of Use to a young Angler, being all founded on Experience.

In *September*, and all the Winter Months, when you angle for *Chub*, *Carp*, and *Bream* with *Paste*, let the Bait be as big as a large *Hazle-nut*: But for *Roach* and *Dace*, the Bigness of an ordinary *Bean* is sufficient.

You may add to any *Paste*, *Assa-fætida*, *Oil of Polipody of the Oak*, *Oil of Ivy*, *Oil of Peter*, *Gum Ivy*, and many other Things, which sometimes wonderfully increase your Sport.

Into all Sorts of *Pastes* whatsoever, beat a little *Cotton-Wool*, *shaved Lint*, or *fine Flax*, which will make it *stick* well on the *Hook*, and not easily wash off: And if you would have the *Paste* keep long, put *Virgins Wax* and *clarified Honey* into it.

When you angle with *Paste*, or any tender *Bait*, have a *small Hook*, a *quick Eye*, a *nimble Hand* and *Rod*, and the latter pretty *stiff* too, or both *Bait* and *Fish* are in danger to be lost. You must *strike* at the very *first Time* you perceive them *bite* or *nibble*. *Pastes* are to be used in *Pits*, *Ponds*, *Mears*, or *slow running Rivers* only. *Note*, this *Rule* is general, and holds in all very tender *Baits*.

When you angle with *Paste*, or any very tender *Bait*, use a *Float* of *Quill*, rather than of *Cork*; because *Cork* will not so easily dip under *Water*, nor the *Bite* so soon be perceived.

Pastes are very good *Baits* for *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Barbel*, *Carp*, *Tench*, *Bream*, and *Bleak*. When you would have your *Pastes* of a *yellow Colour*, always mix into it a little *Turmerick*; but when you desire it of a *Flesh-Colour*, tincture it with a little of the best *Vermilion*.

As to *Ointments* or *Unguents*, many ingenious *Anglers* esteem them so, for the effectual *Furtherance* of this *Sport*, that they affirm they will not only *allure* but even *compel* *Fish* to bite. For my own Part, I honestly confess, that though I have found them in some

measure *advantageous* to my Recreation, yet far from so high a Degree, as has been pretended. However it is worth every Sportsman's while to be acquainted with some of them, that if they are willing to be at the Expence and Labour of a Trial, they may select those for their daily Use, which on Experience they shall find to be the best. One or two of those that are most highly commended, would, I own, be more pleasing to me, were they more *simple*, and less superstitiously compounded: In particular this by Monsieur *Charras*, Apothecary Royal to the late *French* King, *Lewis* the Fourteenth.

Take *Man's Fat* and *Cat's Fat*, of each half an Ounce; *Mummy* finely powder'd, three Drams; *Cummin-seed* finely powdered, one Dram; distilled *Oil of Anise* and *Spike*, of each six Drops; *Civet*, two Grains; and *Campfire*, four Grains: Make an *Ointment* according to Art. When you angle with this, anoint eight Inches of the *Line* next the *Hook*. Keep it in a *Pewter-Box*, made something taper: And, when you use it, never angle with less than two or three *Hairs* next the *Hook*; because if you angle with one *Hair*, it will not stick so well to the *Line*. If you mix some of this *Ointment* with a little *Venice Turpentine*, it will stick the faster; but clog not your *Line* with too much on at a *Time*.

Take *Gum-Ivy*, and put a good Quantity of it into a *Box* made of *Oak*, like those the Apothecaries use of white *Wood* for their *Pills*.

Rub

Rub the Inside of the Box with this Gum, and when you angle, put three or four *Worms* therein, letting them remain but a short Time; for if long it kills them: Then take them out, and use them, putting more in their Stead, out of the *Worm-bag* and *Moss*; and continue to do this all Day.

Gum-Ivy is a Tear which drops from the Body of the larger *Ivy*, being wounded. It is of a yellowish red Colour, of a strong Scent and sharp Taste. That which is sold in the Shops is often *Counterfeit* and *Adulterate*: Therefore, to get true *Gum Ivy*, at *Michaelmas* or Spring, drive several great *Nails* into large *Ivy Stalks*, and having wriggled them till they become very loose, let them remain, and a Gum will issue out of the Hole. Or you may slit several great *Ivy Stalks*, and visit them once a Month, or oftner, to see what *Gum* flows from the wounded Part. This *Gum* is excellent for the Angler's Use; perhaps nothing more so under the Form of an *Unguent*.

Take *Assa-fetida*, half an Ounce; *Campfire*, two Drams; bruise them well together with some Drops of *Oil of Olive*, and put it in a *Pewter-box*, to use as the Receipt from *Monsieur Charras*. Some, instead of *Oil of Olive*, use the Chymical *Oil of Lavender* and *Camomile*; and some add the Quantity of a Nutmeg of *Venice Turpentine* to it. But for a *Trout* in a muddy Water, and for *Gudgeons* in a

clear Water, the best Unguent is thus compounded, *viz.*

Take *Assa-fetida*, three Drams; *Camphire*, one Dram; *Venice Turpentine*, one Dram; beat all together with some Drops of the Chymical Oils of *Lavender* and *Camomile*, of each an equal Quantity; and use it as in the first Direction.

Camphire is a resinous Gum, partly flowing of its own accord, but chiefly by Incision, from a tall Tree growing in *India*. The *Bornean* Camphire is best. Chuse that which is white and clear like Crystal, strong scented, will easily crumble between the Fingers, and being fired will scarcely be quenched. There is a counterfeit or feittitious Sort, that put into a hot Loaf will parch; but the true will melt. It will keep many Years in *Flax-seed*, if it be not exposed to the Air; otherwise it will evaporate and consume to nothing.

Assa-fetida grows in *Media*, *Lybia*, and *Syria*, and is a gummy Juice of *Lasfer*, *Lasferpitium*, or *Sylphion*, gathered from the Root or Stalk cut open. Chuse that which is pure, fine, clammy, and smelling almost like *Garlick*. It will keep good many Years, but it is often counterfeited or adulterated, by mixing *Meal*, *Bran*, and the Gum *Sagapenum* together.

Take *Venice Turpentine*, the best *Hive-honey*, and *Oil of Polypody* of the Oak, drawn by Retort; mix all together, and use it as the first Ointment.

Take Oil of *Ivy-berries*, made by *Expref-
fion* or *Infufion*, and put fome in a *Box*, and
ufe it as is directed for the *Gum-Ivy* in the fe-
cond Receipt.

Difolve *Gum-Ivy* in the *Oil of Spike*, and
anoint the Bait with it. *Mr. Walton* prefcribes
this for a Pike.

Put *Camphire* in the *Moff*, wherein are your
Worms, the Day you angle.

Difolve two Ounces of *Gum-Ivy* in a *Gill*
of *Spring-water*; mix them together with the
like Quantity of the *Oil of Sweet Almonds*; then
take what Quantity of Worms you intend to
ufe that Day, being firft well fcoured in *Moff*,
and put them in *Linnen Thrums* (the Ends of
the *Weaver's Warp* when he has finifhed his
Piece) well washed in *Spring-water*, and
fqueezed: Then wet the *Thrums* in this Com-
pofition, and put them and the *Worms* in a
Linnen-bag, out of which ufe them.

Take *Affa-fetida*, three Drams; *Spikenard*
of *Spain*, one Dram: Put them in a *Pint* of
Spring-water, and let them ftand in a fhady
Place fourteen Days in the Ground: Then
take the Solution out, and having drained it
thro' a *Linnen Cloth*, put to the *Liquor* one
Dram of *Sperma Ceti*, and keep it clofe in a
ftiong *Glafs-bottle*. When you go to angle,
take what Quantity of *Worms* you intend to
ufe that Day, (they being firft well fcoured in
Moff) put them upon a *Pewter Saucer*, and
pour a little of this *Water* upon them; then put
them in the *Moff* again, and ufe them.

Take *Juice of Camomile*, half a Spoonful ; *Chymical Oil of Spike*, one Dram ; *Oil of Comfrey* by Infusion, one Dram and an half ; *Goose-grease*, two Drams : These being well dissolved over the Fire, let them stand till they are cold ; then put them in a strong Glass-bottle, which keep unstopped three or four Days ; Stop it afterwards very well, and when you angle, anoint the Bait with this Composition.

Some add to it three Drams of the *Spirit of Vitriol*, and call it the *universal and infallible Bait*.

Take a Handful of *Houseleek*, and half a Handful of *inner green Bark* of the *Ivy Stalk* : Pound these well together, and press out the *Juice*, and wet your *Moss* therewith. When you angle, put six or eight Worms therein out of the other Bag.

Some use the *Juice of Nettles* and *Houseleek* as the last Receipt, and some only the *Juice of Houseleek*.

Some anoint their *Bait* with the *Marrow* got out of a *Heron's Thigh-bone* ; and some use the *Fat* and *Grease* of a *Heron*.

Some advise to take the *Bones* or *Scull* of a *dead Man*, at the Opening of a Grave, and beat them into Powder, and to put of this Powder into the *Moss* wherein you keep your *Worms* ; but others like the *Grave Earth* as well, and perhaps both may be as well let alone.

Take of *Man's Fat*, *Cat's Fat*, *Heron's Fat*, and of the best *Assa-fætida*, of each two Drams ;
Mum-

Mummy finely powdered, two Drams ; *Cummin-seed* finely powdered, two Scruples ; *Campbire*, *Galbanum*, and *Venice Turpentine*, of each one Dram ; *Civet*, two Grains: Make them, all according to Art, into an indifferent thin Ointment, with the Chymical Oils of *Lavender*, *Anise* and *Camomile*, of each an equal Quantity. Keep this Ointment in a narrow-mouthed and well-glazed Gally-pot, close covered with a Bladder and Leather ; and when you go to angle, take some of it in a small Pewter-box, made taper, and anoint eight Inches of the Line next the Hook therewith, repeating it as often as wash'd off.

This Ointment, which, for its Excellency, some call *Unguentum Piscatorum mirabile*, prodigiously causes Fish to bite, if in the Hand of an Artist that angles within Water, and at proper Times, and with suitable Tackle and Baits, fit for the River, Season, and Fish he designs to catch. The *Man's Fat* you may get of any Surgeons who are concerned in Anatomy, and the *Heron's Fat* from the Poulterers in London : The rest of the Drugs are to be had from the Druggists or Apothecaries. And this Composition will serve you for two or three Summer's Angling.

*All Arts, all Shapes, the wiley Angler tries,
To cloak his Fraud, and tempt the Finny Prize:
Their Sight, their Smell, he carefully explores,
And blends the Druggist's and the Chymist's
Stores ;*

*Devising still, with Fancy ever new,
Pastes, Oils, and Unguents, of each Scent
and Hue.*

C H A P. VII.

Of Artificial, or Dub-flies.

ACCORDING to Mr. *Walton*, (whose Catalogue, though often copied, has never, that I know of, been mended, for the Length of it) there are twelve Kinds of Artificial Flies made to angle with upon the Water. The fittest Season, says he, of using these, is in a blustering windy Day, when the Waters are so troubled that the natural Fly cannot be seen, or rest upon them.

The first is the *Dun-fly*, in *March*, whose Body is made of *Dun-wooll*, and the Wings of the *Partridge's* Feathers.

The second is another *Dun-fly*; the Body made of *Black-wooll*, and the Wings of the *black Drake's* Feathers, and of the Feathers under his Tail.

The third is the *Stone-fly* in *April*; the Body of *black Wooll* made *yellow* under the Wings, and under the Tail, and so finished with Wings of the *Drake*.

The fourth is the *ruddy Fly* in the Beginning of *May*; the Body made of *red Wooll* wrapt about with *black Silk*, and the Wings of the Feathers of the *Drake*, with those of a *red Capon*,

pon, which hang dangling on his Sides next to the Tail.

The fifth is the *yellow or greenish Fly*, in *May* likewise, whose Body is made of *yellow Wooll*, and the Wings of the *red Cock's Hackle* or Tail.

The sixth is the *Black-fly*, in *May* also; the Body made of *black Wooll*, and lapped about with the *Herl* of a *Peacock's Tail*; the Wings made of the Wings of a *brown Capon* with the *blue Feathers* in his Head.

The seventh is the sad *yellow Fly* in *June*; the Body made of *black Wooll*, with a *yellow List* on either Side, and the Wings taken off the Wings of a *Buzzard*, bound with *black Hemp*.

The eighth is the *moorish Fly*, made, the Body of *dusky Wooll*, and the Wings of the *blackish Mail* of the *Drake*.

The ninth is the *tawny Fly*, good until the middle of *June*; the Body made of *tawney Wooll*, the Wings placed contrary against one another, made of the *whitish Mail* of the *wild Drake*.

The tenth is the *Wasp-fly* in *July*; the Body made of *black Wool*, lapped about with *yellow Silk*; the Wings made of the Feathers of the *Drake*, or of the *Buzzard*.

The Eleventh is the *Shell-fly*, good in the Middle of *July*; the Body made of *greenish Wooll*, lapped about with the *Herl* of a *Peacock's Tail*; and the Wings made of the Wings of a *Buzzard*.

The twelfth is the dark *Drake-fly*, good in *August*; the Body made with *black Wooll*, lapped about with *black Silk*; his Wings made with the *Mail* of the *black Drake*, with a *black Head*,

Thus

“ Thus, says that facetious and ingenious Angler, have you a *Jury* of *Flies*, likely to betray and condemn all the *Trouts* in the River.”

His general Directions for *Fly-Angling* are, that your Rod be light and very gentle, consisting of several Pieces. Your Line, especially for three or four Links next to the Hook, should not exceed three or four Hairs at the most, though you ought to fish with it gradually stronger above, in the upper Part of your Line: But when you can attain to angle with one Hair, you will have more *Rises*, and catch more *Fish*. Never encumber yourself with too long a *Line*, as most do: And before you begin to angle, observe to have the *Wind* on your Back, and the *Sun*, if it shines, to be before you, and to fish down the Stream. Carry the Point or Top of your *Rod* downward, by which Means the *Shadow* of yourself and Rod will be least offensive to the Fish, for the Sight of any Shade amazes them, and spoils your Sport, of which you must take the utmost Care.

In the Middle of *March*, (before which Time a Man should not in Honesty catch a *Trout*), or in *April*, if the Weather be dark, or a little *windy* or *cloudy*, the best Fishing is with the *Palmer-fly*, of the *natural* Sorts of which I have already spoken. But of these there are also *artificial* Kinds of divers Colours. The *Palmer-fly* and the *May-fly*, it has been observed,

observed, are the Ground of all *Fly-Angling*. The former are to be thus made.

You must *arm* your *Hook* with the *Line* in the Inside of it ; first whipping your *Silk* two or three Times about the bare *Hook* : Then take your *Scissors*, and cut so much of a *brown Mallard's* Feather as in your own Judgment will make the *Wings* of it ; having regard to the *Bigness* or *Smallness* of your *Hook* : Then lay the outmost Part of your Feather next to your *Hook*, and the Point of your Feather next the *Shank* of your *Hook* ; and having so done, whip it three or four Times about the *Hook* with the same *Silk*, with which your *Hook* was armed, and having made the *Silk* fast, take the *Hackle* of a *Cock* or *Capon's* Neck, or a *Plover's* Top, which is usually better ; strip off one Side of the Feather, and then take the *Hackle*, *Silk*, or *Crewel*, *Gold* or *Silver Thread*, and make these fast at the Bent of the *Hook*, that is, below your *Arming*. You must take the *Hackle*, the *silver* or *gold Thread*, and work it up to the *Wings*, shifting or still removing your *Finger*, as you turn the *Silk* about the *Hook* : And still looking, at every Turn, that your *Gold*, or what Materials soever you make your *Fly* of, lies right and neatly, which if you find they do, when you have made the *Head*, fasten all, and then work your *Hackle* up to the *Head*, and make that fast also : Then with a *Needle* or *Pin* divide the *Wing* into two, and with the *arming Silk* whip it about cross-ways betwixt the

the

the Wings; and lastly, you must with your Thumb turn the Point of the Feather towards the Bent of the Hook; then, having viewed the Proportion, if all be neat, fasten, and you have done; or trim off the Superfluities with your Scissars.

It is in reality true, what *Mr. Walton* says, that no Directions can be given to teach a Man of a dull Capacity to make a *Fly* well: And yet, even these Directions, with a little Practice, will help an ingenious Angler in a great Degree. But to see a *Fly* made by an Artist, is the best Instruction; after which the Angler may walk by the River, and mark what *Flies* fall on the Water that Day, and catch one of them, if he see the *Trouts* leap at a *Fly* of that Kind: And then, having always Hooks ready hung with him, and also a Bag with *Bears Hair*, the Hair of a *brown* or *sad-coloured Heifer*, Hackles of a *Cock* or *Capon*, several Colours of *Silk* and *Crewel* to make the Body of the *Fly*, and Feathers of a *Drake's Head*, black or brown *Sheep's Wooll*, or *Hog's Wooll*, or *Hair*, Threads of *Gold* and of *Silver*, and likewise other coloured Feathers, both of little *Birds* and *speckled Fowl*; having these, I say, with him in a Bag, let him try to make a *Fly*, and though he miss at first, yet with a little Practice he will hit it better, and even to great Perfection. When he can once make his *Fly* right, and have the Luck to light where there is Store of *Trouts*, a dark Day, and a right Wind, he will catch such Quantities
of

of them, as will encourage him to grow more and more in Love with the Art of *Fly-making*.

Observe then, for a *May-fly*, that you make his Body with greenish or willowish coloured *Crewel*, darkening it in most Places with waxed Silk, or ribbing it with black Hair, and some of them with silver Thread. The Wings, for the Colour, must be such as you see the *Fly* to have at that Season, and even at that very Day, on the Water.

You may make the *Oak-fly* with an Orange-tawny and black Ground, and the Brown of a *Mallard's* Feather for the Wings.

Several Sorts of the *Palmer-flies* are commended, not only those ribbed with Silver and Gold, but others that have their Bodies all made of black, or some with red, and a red Hackle.

You may also make the *Hawthorn-fly*, which is all black, and not big, but the smaller the better; or a Fly with a *Peacock's* Feather, which is excellent in a bright Day.

Be sure you want not, in your *Magazine-bag*, the *Peacock's* Feather, and Grounds of such Wooll and *Crewel* as will make the *Grafsopper*. And observe, that usually the smallest Flies are the best. Also, that the *light Fly* usually makes the most Sport in a dark Day, and the *darkest* and *least Fly* in a bright Day. But whatever the Day may be, you are to repair upon any Occasion to your *Magazine-bag*, and make your Flies *lighter* or *sadder* according to your Fancy or the Weather.

In a Word, as the great Difficulty is to obtain the Colour of the *Fly* which the Fish take at the Instant of your Angling, it is impossible to give any certain Directions on that Head; because several Rivers and Soils are haunted by peculiar Sorts of Flies, and the Flies that comes usually in such a Month of the Year, may the succeeding Year come almost a Month sooner or later, as the Season proves colder or hotter.

Tho' sometimes *Fish* change their *Fly* once or twice in one Day, yet usually they seek not for another Sort, till they have for some Days glutted themselves with a former, which is commonly when those Flies are near Death, and ready to go out.

Having mentioned the Angler's *Magazine-bag*, with a Word or two of its Furniture, I shall here set down more at large the Particulars of what may be useful on these Occasions, of which the diligent Angler will know how to make his Advantage.

1. *Bears Hair* of diverse Colours and Shades; as gray, dun, light coloured, sad coloured, bright shining, and bright brown.
 2. *Camels Hair*, sad, light, and of a middle Colour. 3. *Badgers Hair*, or the brownish soft Fur, which is on some Part of the Badger's Skin, after it is in the Skinners Lime-pits.
 4. *Spaniels* soft Fur and Hair, from divers Parts of the Body, and of various Colours, as particularly all Sorts of Browns and Blacks. 5. Procure from the Butchers,
 or

or others, black, red, whitish, and fanded *Hog's Down*, such as is combed from the Roots of the Hair, or Bristles of Hogs of those Colours. And you may get white Hogs Down dyed of any Colour you judge convenient, because it both shines well, and is stiff and lively. 6. *Sheeps Wool* of all Colours, both natural and artificial. 7. *Mobairs* of all Colours, especially black, blue, purple, white, violet, *Isabella* and *Philomot* Colours, yellow and tawny. 8. Get Hairs and Furs from the Flanks and other soft Parts of a *black Cow*, *red Cow*, and *brended Cow*, and of these have brown, sad brown, light brown, and perfect black. 9. Get Pieces of *Camlets*, both Hair and Worsted, of all Colours you can. 10. You may get most excellent Dubbing from *Castling Skins* of *Calves* and *Colts*, and several Colours and Shades off one Skin. 11. *Furs* of *Squirrels*, and *Squirrels-Tail*, black *Cat's-Tail*, yellow *dun Cat*, *Hare's Neck*, white *Weasel's-Tail*, *Mole*, *Rabbit*, *Down* of a *Fox Cub* ash-coloured at the Roots, *Fur* of an old *Fox*, *Fur* of an old *Otter*, *Fur* of an *Otter Cub*, *Hair* of a *Badger's Skin* that has been in a *Lime Pit*, *Martens* yellow *Fur*, *Ferret's Fur*, &c. 12. *Hackles* (which are *Feathers* about a *Cock* or *Capon's Neck*, and such as hang down on each Side next their Tail) of all Colours, as the red, *dun*, yellowish, white *Orange-coloured*, and perfect black. These are of especial Use to make the *Palmer-fly*. 13. *Feathers* of all Sort of *Fowls*, and of all Colours; as *Feathers*

thers on the Back, and other Parts of the wild *Mallard* or *Drake*; Feathers of a *Partridge*, of a *brown Hen*, of a *Throstle-wing*, those got from the Quills in the Wings of *Shepstaes*, *Ssares* or *Starlings*, *Feldfares* and *Throstles*; the *Peacock's Herle*; Feathers of a *Heron's Neck*; the Top or Cop of a *Plover* or *Lapwing*, which will make the black Gnat; the black Feather of an *Ostrich*, and those of various dyed Colours, which Children and others wear in Caps; Feathers from Quills in a *Blackbird's Wing* and Tail; the black Down of a *Water-coot*, and, in a Word, Feathers of any other Colours and Birds. 14. *Silk* of all Colours, small, but very strong. 15. *Twist* and *Wire*, both of Gold and Silver. 16. A Pair of *Scissars*. 17. *Wax* of divers Colours.

The Directions already given for the *Palmer-fly* will teach the Use of these Materials on every Ocaasion: The Learner will observe only in general, that in making any Fly, he is *First*, To hold fast his Hook and Line: *Secondly*, To make two or three Whips about the bare Hook: *Thirdly*, To join the Hook and Line: *Fourthly*, To put on the Wings: *Fifthly*, To twirl and lap on the Dubbing: *Sixthly*, To work it up towards the Head: *Seventhly*, To part the Wings: *Eighthly*, To nip off the superfluous Dubbing from the Silk: *Ninthly*, To fasten: *Tenthly*, To trim and adjust the Fly. I shall now add a few other general Instructions.

1. In making *Artificial Dub-flies*, chiefly observe and imitate the Belly of the Fly ; for that the Fish most take notice of, as being most in their Sight : And let the Wings of the Fly always be of an equal Length, else it will not swim right and true.

2. When you try how to fit the Colour of the Fly, wet the Dubbing, lest you be mistaken ; for tho', when dry, they exactly suit the Colour of the Fly, yet the Water alters most Colours.

3. Always make your Dub-flies on a Sunshiny Day : And to know the exact Colour of your Dubbing, hold it betwixt your Eye and the Sun.

4. Never let the Tail of your Dub-fly descend lower than till you come to the Bend of the Hook, and not into the Bent itself, as some practise.

5. When Trouts often shew themselves at your Fly, and yet do not take it, be assured that either the Day or Water is improper for Fly-Angling ; or, which is far more probable, that your Dub-fly is not of the right Colour and Shape they then covet.

6. Tho' some always dub with Silk of the most predominant Colour of the Fly ; yet other good Anglers dub Duns with yellow, and Browns with red Silk, and in *September* with violet-coloured.

7. Flies made of the Hairs of Bears, Hogs, Squirrels Tail, Camels, Dogs, Foxes, Badgers,

gers, Otters, Ferrets, Cows, Calves Skins, &c. are more natural, lively, and keep Colour better in the Water, than Flies made of Crewels and Worsted Stuffs, unless you mingle Hair therewith.

8. The Feather got from the Quill of a *Shepstare*, *Stare*, or *Starling's* Wings, is the best Feather generally to use for Dub-fly Wings. Next are the Feathers got from the Quills of *Throstles*, *Field-fares*, *Black-birds*, and those from the Back of the wild *Mallard* or *Drake*. These latter are used by some for most Sort of *Flies*. If you desire a *black* Wing, use the Feather of a *Black-bird*; if a *red* Wing, Feathers out of a *Partridge's* Tail; if a *brown* Wing, Feathers of the *Throstle*; if a *greenish* Wing, Feathers from a *Lapwing*, or *Plover*: But many use only the Feathers of *Shepstare* Quills, for almost all Sort of *Flies*, and say they afford great Variety of Shades.

9. The *Palmer-fly*, *Gold-backle*, *Silver-backle*, *Great-dun*, *Dark-brown*, *Early-bright-brown*, *Latter-bright-brown*, *Little-whirling-dun*, *Thorn-tree-fly*, *Great-whirling-dun*, *Yellow-dun*, *Dun-cut*, *Green-drake*, *Stone-fly*, *black May-fly*, *yellow May-fly*, *Ant-fly*, and *Camlet-fly*, are Flies sufficient to be furnished with: But that nothing may be wanting on this Head which can be delivered in Writing, I shall add another and more copious Catalogue of *Dub-flies* to that of Mr. *Walton's* before inserted, which the experienced Angler may vary

vary and improve according to his own Judgment.

In *February* are, 1. The *Little Red-brown*, made of the *Fur* of the black Spot in a *Hog's Ear* wrapp'd on with red Siik, the *Wings* of the Male of a *Mallard* almost white. 2. The *Palmer-fly*, or *Plain-hackle*, made with a rough black Body, either of *black Spaniels Fur*, or the *Whirl* of an *Ostrich Feather*, and the red *Hackle* of a *Capon* over all. 3. The *Silver-hackle*, made with a black Body, Silver Twist over that, and a red Feather. 4. The *Great-hackle*; the Body black, and wrapped with a red Feather of a *Capon* untrim'd, that is the whole Length of the *Hackle* on the Top or Back of the Fly; which makes it swim better, and, on a whirling Water, kill great Fish. 5. The *Gold-hackle*, the Body black, ribb'd over with Gold Twist, and a red Feather over all, does great Execution. 6. The *Great-dun*, made with dun Bears Hair, and the Wings of the grey Feather of a *Mallard* near his Tail. This is the very best Fly this Month, and makes admirable Sport. 7. The *Great-blue-dun*, with Dubbing of the Bottom of Bears Hair next to the Roots, mix'd with a little blue Camlet; the Wings of the dark grey Feather of a *Mallard*. 8. The *Dark-brown*, with Dubbing of the brown Hair of the Flank of a bred Cow, and the Grey-feather of a *Drake* for Wings. These Flies are some for one Water and Sky, and some for another; and accordingly the Size and Colour are altered

tered : Use a small *Hackle*, if the Water be clear ; or a bigger, if something dark ; especially when you cannot know certainly, in this Month or any other, what Fly is taken.

In *March*, use all the same *Flies* with *February*, but make them less. The Names are now, 1. The *Little-Whirling-dun*, made of the Bottom Fur of a *Squirrel's-tail*, and the Wings of the grey Feather of a wild *Drake* or *Mallard*. 2. The *Early-bright-brown*, made either of the Down of a *Spaniel*, or the Hair of a red Cow's Flank, with a grey Wing. 3. The *Whitish-dun*, made of the Roots of *Camels* Hair, and the Wings of a wild *Mallard's* grey Feather. 4. The *Thorn-tree-fly*, made of an absolute *black*, mix'd with eight or ten Hairs of *Isabella*-coloured Mohair ; the Body as little as can be made ; the Wings of a bright wild *Mallard's* Feather. It is an admirable Fly, and a great Killer. 5. The *Blue-dun*, made with the Combings of the Neck of a black *Grey-hound*. It is a fine blue. The Wings can scarce be too white. It is taken best in the latter Part of the Month. 6. The *Little-black-gnat*, taken at the same Time, and made of the Fur of a *black Water-Dog*, or the Down of a young *black Water-Coot* : The Wings of the Male of a wild *Mallard*, as white as can be : The Body as little as you can possibly make it, and the Wings as short as the Body. Some make the Body of the *Cop*, or *Top Feather* on the Head of a *Plover*. 7. The *Latter-bright-brown*, taken from the Middle

dle of *March* to the Middle of *April*, and made with Dubbing got out of a Skinner's Lime-pits, and of the Hair of an *abortive Calf*, which the Lime will turn as bright as Gold. Wings of the Feather of a *brown Hen* is best.

All the same *Hackles* and *Flies* that are taken in *March*, will be taken in *April* also, with this Distinction only, that all the *Browns* be lapped with *red Silk*, and the *Duns* with *yellow Silk*. The Names peculiar to this Month, are, 1. The *Small-bright-brown* made of *Spaniel's Fur*; with a light *grey Wing*, to be used in a bright Day and clear Water. 2. The *Little-dark-brown*, the Dubbing of dark *Brown*, and *Violet Camlet* mixed; the grey Feather of a wild *Mallard* for Wings. 3. The *Great-whirling-dun*, usually taken from about the twelfth of this Month, all the Month through, about Noon, and by Fits from thence to the End of *June*. It is one of the best Flies we have, and commonly made of the Down of a *Fox Cub*, which is of an Ash-Colour at the Roots, and ribbed about yellow Silk: The Wings of the pale grey Feather of a wild *Mallard*. 4. The *Violet-fly*, taken only a short Time about the Beginning, and made of a dark *Violet-Stuff*, and a very little dun *Bears Hair* mixed therewith; the wild *Mallard's* grey Feather for Wings. 5. The *Yellow-dun*, made of *Camels Hair*, and *yellow Camlet*; or *yellow Wool* of a Blanket, well mixed, and a *white grey Wing*. Others make it of Dun Hair of a *Bear*, and some yellow

yellow Fur of a *Martern* mixed, and dub it with yellow Silk. The Wings from the Quill of a Shepfare's Wing. It is an excellent Fly both for *April* and *May*. 6. The *Horse-flesh-fly*, taken best in an Evening, from two Hours before Sun-set, till Twilight, and the whole Month through. His Dubbing of *blue Mohair*, with *Pink-coloured*, and red *Tammy* mixed ; a light-coloured *Wing*, and a dark brown *Head*. It begins to be taken best about the twentieth of the Month.

In the Month of *May* all the same *Hackles* and *Flies* may be used as in *April*, the *Hackles* only brighter, and the *Flies* smaller. To these I will add seven of the very prime *Flies* for *May*, and indeed all the Year ; especially the *Dun-cut*, *Green-drake*, and *Stone-fly* ; and then nine of smaller Esteem, which yet are not to be despised.

In the first Class are, 1. The *Dun-cut* ; its Dubbing of *Bears Dun Hair*, with a little blue and yellow intermixed with it ; a large dun Wing, and two Horns at the Head, made of the Hair of a Squirrel's Tail. It is a very killing Fly. 2. The artificial *Green-drake*, which comes in about the Middle of *May*, and is taken until *Midsummer* in mountainous stony Rivers, and that at all Hours, is made thus : On a large Hook dub with *Camels Hair*, bright *Bears Hair*, the soft Down combed from a *Hog's Bristles*, and yellow *Camlet*, well mixed together : The Body must be long, and ribb'd about with *green Silk*, or rather *yel-*
low

low Silk waxed with *green Wax*; the Whisks of the Tail of the long Hair of *Sables*, or *Fitchet*; and the Wings of the white-grey Feather of a wild *Mallard* dyed yellow. 3. The *Artificial Stone-fly*, made of *Bears* dun Hair, with a little brown and yellow *Camlet* well mixed; but so placed, that the Fly may be more yellow on the Belly, and towards the Tail underneath, than in any other Part. You may place two or three Hairs of a *black Cat's* Beard on the Top of the Hook, in the arming or whipping, so as to be turned up when you wrap on your Dubbing, and to stand almost upright. This *Fly* is to be ribb'd with *yellow Silk*, and his *Wings* to be long and very large, of the dark-grey Feather of the wild *Mallard*, or of the brown soft Feather of a *Kite*, or of the Feather got out of the Wing of a *Throstle*. Sometimes you may *dibble* with an *artificial Stone-fly* in the still Deeps, in an Evening, if any gentle Gale of Wind or Breeze furl them. 4. The *black May-fly*, which is the next in Order, made in the Body of the black Whirl of an *Ostrich-feather*, ribb'd with *Silver Twist*, and the black Hackle of a *Cock*, or *Capon*, over all. It is a *killing Fly*, but not equal with the *Green-drake*, or *Stone-fly*. 5. The little *yellow May-fly*, of the same Shape with the *Green-drake*, and of as bright a Yellow as can be seen, made of a bright yellow *Camlet*; the Wings of a white-grey Feather dyed yellow. Some dub it with yellow Fur of a *Martern*. 6. The *Grey-drake*, in Shape and

Dimensions perfectly the same with the *Green-drake*, but of another Colour, being of a paler and more livid Yellow, green, and ribb'd with black quite down his Body, with black shining Wings, diaphanous and very tender. It comes in after the *Green-drake*, and kills very well. It is made of the whitish Down of a *Hog's* Bristles, and black *Spaniel's* Fur mixed, and ribb'd down the Body with *black Silk*: The Whisks of the Tail of a Beard of a *black Cat*, and the Wings of the black-grey Feather of the wild *Mallard*. 7. The *Camlet-fly*, taken from the Middle of *May* till the End of *June*; in shape like a Moth, with fine diapered or watered Wings. It is imitated with a dark-brown shining *Camlet*, ribb'd over with very small light green *Silk*, and the Wings of the double grey Feather of a wild *Mallard*. It is a very killing *Fly* for *Graylings* and small Fish.

In the second Class of *May-flies* are, 1. The *Turkey-fly*, with Dubbing ravelled out of some blue *Stuff*, and lapped about with yellow *Silk*; the Wings of a grey wild *Mallard's* Feather. 2. The *yellow Palmer*, made with a yellow Body, ribb'd with *Gold Twist*, and large Wings of a wild *Mallard's* Feather dyed yellow, with the red Hackle of a *Capon* over all. 3. The *black Fly*, with Dubbing of black *Spaniel's* Fur, and Wings of a grey wild *Mallard's* Feather. 4. The *Light-brown*, made of *light brown* Hair, with a slender Body; the Dubbing

bing twirled upon small *red Silk*, and raised with the Point of a Needle, that the Ribs or Rows of Silk may appear through: The Wings of the grey Feather of a wild *Mallard*. 5. The *Little-dun*, with Dubbing of *Bears dun Hair* whirled upon yellow *Silk*, and Wings of a wild *Mallard's* grey Feather. 6. The *White-gnat*, with a pale Wing and a black Head. 7. The *Peacock-fly*; its Body of the Whirl of a *Peacock's* Feather, with a red Head, and Wings of a wild *Mallard's* Feather. 8. The *Cow-lady*, a little Fly, with the Body of a *Peacock's* Feather, the Wings of a *red Feather*, or Stripes of the red Hackle of a *Cock*. 9. The *Cowturd-fly*, with light brown and yellow Dubbing mixed; the Wings of the dark grey Feather of a wild *Mallard*.

From the first till near the End of *June* are taken the *Green-drake* and *Stone-fly*; and all the Month the *Camlet-fly*. Besides these the Sportsman may now make, 1. The *Owl-fly*, taken in the Middle of the Month, late at Night: Its Dubbing of a white *Weasel's* Tail, and a white grey Wing. 2. The *Barm-fly*, with Dubbing of the Fur of a yellow dun *Cat*, and the grey Wings of a wild *Mallard's* Feather. 3. The *Purple-backle*, made with a purple Body, whipped about with a red *Capon's* Feather. 4. The *Purple-gold-backle*, made with a purple Body, and *Gold Twist* over that, all whipped about with a *red Capon's* Feather. 5. The *Flesh-fly*, with Dubbing of a black *Spaniel's* Fur and blue *Wool* mixed, and

a grey Wing. 6. The *little Flesh-fly*, with a Body made of the Whirl of a *Peacock's* Feather, and the Wings of the grey Feather of a wild *Drake*. 7. The *Peacock-fly*, its Body and Wings both of the Feather of that Fowl. 8. The *Ant-fly*, with Dubbing of brown and red *Camlets* mixed, and a light grey Wing. 9. The *Brown-gnat*, made with a very slender Body, of brown and violet *Camlets* mixed well together, with a light grey Wing. 10. The *Little-black-gnat*, with Dubbing of black *Mohair*, and a white-grey Wing. 11. The *Green-grafshopper*, with Dubbing of green and yellow *Wooll* mixed, ribbed over with green *Silk*, and a red *Capon's* Feather over all. 12. The *Dun-grafshopper*, its Body slender, made of dun *Camlet*, and a dun *Hackle* at Top. 13. The *Brown-hackle*, made of the light-brown Hair of a fat *Colt*, with a red *Hackle* over all, wrapped with Ash-coloured or Hair-coloured *Silk*.

The *Dub-flies* for *July* are, 1. The *Badger-fly*, with Dubbing of the soft brown Fur of a *Badger's* Skin, that has been in the *Skinner's* Lime-pits, twirled upon red *Silk*, with a red Head, and a sad grey Wing of a wild *Mallard's* Feather. It is an excellent Fly for this Month in many Rivers, and also taken in many Places in *March* and *April*. 2. The *Orange-fly*, its Dubbing of Orange-coloured *Wooll*, and the Wings of the Feather of a *Black-bird's* Quill. 3. The *Little-white-dun*, its Body made of white *Mohair*, and the
Wings

Wings of a *Heron's* blue Feather. 4. The *Wasp-fly*, made either of dark-brown Dubbing, or else of the Fur of a black *Cat's* Tail, ribbed about with yellow *Silk*; its Wings of the grey Feather of a wild *Mallard*. 5. The *Black-hackle*, the Body made of the Whirl of a *Peacock's* Feather, and a black Hackle Feather on the Top. There is also another, made of a *Peacock's* Herl without any Wings. 6. The *Shell-fly*, with Dubbing of yellow-green *Jersey Wooll*, and a little white *Hog's* Hair mixed. 7. The *Black-blue-dun*, the Dubbing of the Fur of a black *Rabbit*, mixed with a little yellow; the Wings of the Feather of a blue *Pigeon's* Wing.

The *Dub-flies* for *August* are all the same with those in *July*, and also all *Browns and Duns* that were taken in *May*. To which may be added, 1. The *late Ant-fly*, with Dubbing of the dark-brown Hair of a *Cow*, some Red warped in for the Tag of the Tail, and a dark Wing: A very killing Fly. 2. The *Fern-fly*, with Dubbing of the Fur of a *Hare's* Neck, that is of the Colour of Fern, and a darkish grey Wing of a wild *Mallard's* Feather. 3. The *White-hackle*, its Body of white *Mohair*, and wrapped about with a white Hackle Feather. 4. The *Buff-brown*, made of the light brown Hair of a *Dog's* Ear; the Head black; the Wings of the Feather of a red *Hen*, whipped with Orange-coloured *Silk*. 5. The *Hearth-fly*, made of the Wooll of an old black *Sheep*

with some grey Hairs in it for the Body and Head ; the Wings of the light Feather of a *Shepstare's* Quill. 6. The *Pismire-fly*, made of bright-brown *Bears* Hair, twirled upon red *Silk* ; the Wings of the saddest-coloured Feather got from the Quill of a *Shepstare's* Wing.

In *September*, besides the Flies taken in *August*, is chiefly in esteem the *little Blue-dun*, made of the Down of a Mouse for Body and Head, dubbed with sad Ash-coloured *Silk* ; Wings of the sad-coloured Feather of a *Shepstare's* Quill.

-- Observe, that the Feathers got from the Quills of the *Shepstare's* Wing, *Throstle's* Wing, or *Feldfare's* Wing, are generally better to use for the *Dub-fly*, than those got from the *wild Mallard*.

I will not add any other *Catalogue*, lest even these should be thought more than sufficient, but conclude with this general Direction, which will always be of Service.

*When artful Flies the Angler would prepare,
This Task, of all, deserves his utmost Care :
Nor Verse nor Prose can ever teach him well
What Masters only know, and only Use can
tell.*

*Yet thus at large we venture to exhort :
Nature best mimick'd, best secures the Sport.*

Chap. 7. *The APPARATUS.* 127
*Of Flies the Kinds, their Seasons, and their
Breed,
Their Shapes, their Hue, (which nice Obser-
vance need,)
Which most the Trout admires, where easiest
gain'd,
Experience best will teach you or some Friend.
For sev'ral Kinds must ev'ry Month supply,
(So great's his Passion for Variety :)
Nay, if new Species o'er the Waves you
find,
Try ; you'll acknowledge Fortune amply kind.*

End of the FIRST PART.





T H E
British A N G L E R.

P A R T the SECOND.

*Containing a Description of the several
Sorts of Fish.*

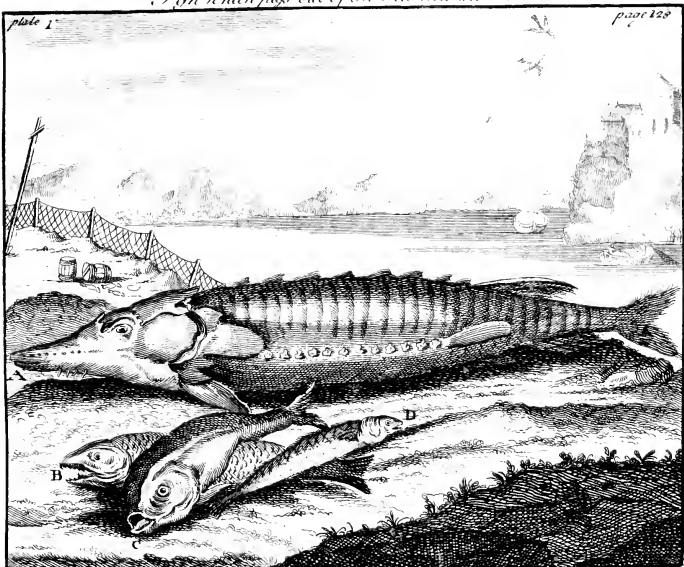
C H A P. I.
Of the SALMON.



HAVING furnished my young *Pupil* with Variety of *Tackle* and *Baits*, I now lead him to take a View of the various Objects of his Sport, which he will meet with in our *Rivers*, and upon the *Sea-Coasts* of *Great-Britain*.

I might begin by dividing our *River-Fish* into such as never go out of *fresh Water*, and such as are only Sojourners therein at certain Seasons, to obey the Dictates of Nature.

This



B. Cole Sculp

A. A. Shad B. A. Salmon C. A. Haddock D. A. Smelt

This would indeed be the most *methodical Way*, were I to write as a *Philosopher*; but as an *Angler*, I think it more natural to begin with those Fish which are in the highest Esteem, either for *Sport* or the *Table*; leaving the other *Distinction* to be made by the *Engraver*, in the *Plate* here inserted.

The *Salmon* has the Honour of being called the King of fresh Water Fish, and is ever bred in Rivers that communicate immediately with the Sea; yet so far from it as beyond all Tincture of Salt or Brackishness. He casts his Spawn in most Rivers in the Month of *August*, or the Beginning of *September*. Some affirm, that they then dig a Hole or Grave in a safe Place in the Gravel, and there place their Eggs or Spawn, after the Melter has done his natural Office, and then hide it with the utmost Caution, and cover it over with Gravel and Stones. In this Manner they leave it to the Sun's genial Protection, who by a gentle Heat, which he infuses into that cold Element, impregnates it with Life, and produces *Samlets* early in the following Spring.

The *Salmons* having staid their appointed Time, and done this natural Duty in the fresh Waters, haste to the Sea before Winter, both the Melters and the Spawners: But if they are stopped by Floodgates or Weirs, or lost in the fresh Waters, those so left behind by Degrees grow sick, lean, unseasonable, and *kipper*. The Meaning of this Word is, that they have a boney Gristle grow out of their lower Chaps,

130 *The* BRITISH ANGLER. P. II.
resembling a Hawk's Beak, which hinders their feeding, and occasions them in Time to pine away and die. It is observed, that the *Salmon* may live thus one Year from the Sea : But he grows insipid and tasteless, and loses both his Blood and Strength, and the second Year he certainly dies. And it is also observed, that those little *Salmons* called *Skeggers*, which abound in many Rivers which run into the Sea, are bred by such sickly *Salmons* that did not go to the Sea ; and that though they abound, yet they never thrive to any considerable Bigness.

But if the old *Salmon* gets to the Sea, then that Gristle which shews him to be kipper wears away, or is cast off, as the Eagle is said to cast off his Bill. The Fish recovers his Strength, and comes next Summer to the same River, if possible, to renew the Enjoyment of his former Pleasures. Thus, this King of the Rivers, like other Monarchs and great Persons, who have both their Winter and Summer Seats, has the fresh Rivers for Summer, and the salt Water for Winter, to spend his Life in ; which, as Lord *Bacon* observes in his *History of Life and Death*, is not above ten Years. It is to be observed, that though the *Salmon* grows big in the Sea, yet he grows fat only in fresh Rivers ; and that the farther they get from the Sea, the fatter and better they are.

Though the *Salmons* make very hard Shift to get out of the fresh Rivers into the Sea ;
yet

yet they will labour harder to get out of the Sea into the Rivers, in order to spawn, or possess the Pleasures that they have formerly found there. To this End, they will force themselves thro' Flood-gates, or over Weirs, Hedges, Stops in the Water, even to a Height beyond common Belief. *Gesner* speaks of such Places as are known to be more than eight Foot above Water. And our *Cambden* mentions the like Wonder in *Pembrokeshire*, where the River *Tivy* falls into the Sea, and the Fall is so perpendicular, and so high, that the People stand in Amaze at the Strength and Slight by which the *Salmon* use to gain the Ascent. The Manner of it, and the Height of the Place are so remarkable, that it is known by the Name of the *Salmon-leap*, and is thus described by our old Bard *Michael Drayton*, in his *Polybion*.

*And when the Salmon seeks a fresher Stream
to find,
(Which hither from the Sea comes yearly by his
Kind)
As he towards Season grows, and stems the wa-
try Tract,
Where Tivy falling down, makes an high Ca-
taract ;
Forc'd by the rising Rocks that there his Course
oppose,
As tho' within her Bounds they meant him to in-
close :*

Here

132 *The BRITISH ANGLER.P.II.*
 Here, when the labouring Fish does at the Foot
 arrive,
 And finds that by his Strength he does but vainly
 strive,
 His Tail takes in his Mouth, and bending like a
 Bow
 That's to full Compass drawn, aloft himself doth
 throw ;
 Then springing at his Height, as doth a little
 Wand,
 That bended End to End, and started from Man's
 Hand,
 Far off itself doth cast ; so does the Salmon-
 vault ;
 And if at first he fail, his second Summer-fault
 He instantly essays, and from his nimble Ring,
 All jerking, never leaves, until himself he fling
 Above th' opposing Stream.—

It has been observed by Foreigners, that there is no better *Salmon* than in *England* ; and that though some of our Northern Countries have as fat and as large as the River *Thames*, yet none are of so exquisite a Taste.

As the Age of a *Salmon* exceeds not ten Years, so his Growth is very sudden. It is said, that after he is got into the Sea, he becomes, from a *Samlet* not so big as a *Gudgeon*, to be a *Salmon*, in as short a Time as a Gosling becomes a Goose. This has been observed by tying a Ribband, or some known Piece of Tape or Thread, into the Tail of some young *Salmons*, which have been taken in Weirs as they

they swim toward the salt Water, and then by taking a Part of them again in the same Place at their Return from the Sea, which is usually about six Months after. The like Experiment hath been tried upon young Swallows, who, after six Month's Absence, have been observed to return to the same Chimney, there to make their Habitations for the Summer following: Which has inclined many to think, that every *Salmon* usually returns to the same River in which he was bred; as young Pigeons taken out of the same Dove-cote, are known to return thither.

The *He Salmon*, or *Melter*, is usually bigger than the *Spawner*: He is also more kipper, and less able to endure a Winter in fresh Water than she is: Yet is the Female, at that Time when she looks less kipper and better, altogether as watery and as bad Meat as the Male. But as there is no general Rule without an Exception, so there are some few Rivers in this Nation, that have *Trouts* and *Salmons* in Season in Winter. This is particularly certain of the River *Wye* in *Monmouthshire*, where they are in Season from *September* till *April*.

The *Salmon* usually stays not long in a Place, as *Trouts* will, but covets still to go nearer the Spring-head. He does not, like the *Trout*, and many other Fish, lie near the Water-side, or the Roots of Trees, but swims in the deep and broad Parts of the Stream, and usually in the Middle, near the Ground. It is there you are to fish for him, and that he is most likely
to

to be caught, either with a *Worm*, a *Minnow*, or a *Fly*. But the first of these is to be preferred, he being not so frequently observed to bite at a *Minnow*, or a *Fly*. The *Lob* or *Garden-worm* is the best, which should be well scoured, that is, kept seven or eight Days in Moss, before you fish with them : And if you double your Time of eight into sixteen, twenty, or more Days, it is still better ; for the Worms will be yet clearer, tougher, and more lively, and continue so longer upon your Hook. They may be preserv'd longer by keeping them cool, and in fresh Moss, into which some advise to put a little Camphire.

It is a Custom with many to fish for a *Salmon* with a Ring of Wire on the Top of their Rod, through which the Line may run to as great a Length as is necessary when he is hook'd. And to that End, some use a Wheel about the Middle of their Rod, or near their Hand.

Experienced Anglers have been known to keep a little Box in their Pockets, anointed with two or three Drops of *Oil* of *Ivy-berries*, into which they put their Worms two or three at a Time, half an Hour or an Hour before they hang them on the Hooks, in order to give them a Scent. This Smell is said to be almost irresistibly attractive, notwithstanding what some have offered, that Fish can smell nothing whatsoever. Oil of *Polypody* of the Oak has also been recommended, as proper to anoint the Bait : But of this see more in the Chapter of *Pastes* and *Unguents*.

Both the *Trout* and the *Salmon*, when in Season, have, at their first taking out of the Water, and, which continues during Life, their Bodies adorned, the first with Spots of such a *sable* Hue, and the other with Spots of such a lovely *red*, as give them a greater Addition of natural Beauty, than was ever given to any of the Fair by their artificial Paint and Patches.

The Flesh of the *Salmon* is preferred by some before all other Fish, either of the Sea or River. It is very sweet, and affords excellent Nourishment; and therefore, unless eaten moderately, may occasion Surfeits. The *Salmon-smelts* are lighter Food, and eaten as the larger of the *Salmon* Species.

Most Rivers in *England* and *Wales*, where they disembogue themselves into the Sea, and so upwards for several Miles, are abundantly stored with *Salmons*; but those of principal Note, are the *Thames*, the *Severn*, and the *Trent*; the *Lon* at *Lancaster*; about *Cockersand Abbey*; at *Wirkinton* in *Cumberland*, *Bywell* in *Northumberland*, *Durham*, and *Newcastle upon Tyne*; the *Dee* in *Cheshire*, and the Rivers *Usk* and *Wye* in *Monmouthshire*.

Besides the *Salmon-leap* in *Pembrokeshire*, there is another in the River *Ban* in *Ireland*. This River's Head is in the Mountains of *Mourn* in the County of *Down*, and it passes through *Lough Eaugh*, or *Lough Sidney*, a large Lake in the County of *Colrain*. Mr. *Cambden* says, it breeds *Salmons* in Abundance, above all other Rivers in all *Europe*; because
it

it is thought to exceed all other Rivers for Clearness, in which Sort of Water *Salmons* delight. It's almost incredible, says the same Author, what Abundance of *Salmons* are bred in the Rivers *Don* and *Dee*, at *Aberdeen* in *Scotland*, as well as in others on both Sides of that Kingdom. There was a Law in *Scotland*, that they should not be caught from the Assumption of our Lady, the 15th of *August*, to *St. Andrew's Day*, *November* the 30th, and they are reputed amongst the greatest Commodities of the Kingdom ; it having been enacted, that none should be sold to *Englishmen* but for *English Gold*.

The *Salmon's* Biting Time is at nine o' Clock in the Forenoon, and three o' Clock in the Afternoon, in a clear Water, and when the Wind blows against the Stream ; and the only Seasons are from the Middle of *April* to the End of *August*. When struck, he usually plunges and leaps, but does not so frequently endeavour to run to the End of the Line, as the Trout will. Young *Salmons* are very tender mouthed, as well as *Graylings* ; and are frequently lost by their Hold, after hooked : Therefore some Persons fasten two Hooks together, like double Pike-hooks used in Trowling ; not made with the Points opposite to one another, but almost a quarter of a Circle asunder ; and on these they make their *Fly*, that if one Hook break Hold, the other may not fail.

For

For the small *Salmon-smelt*, the *Brandling*, *Gilt-tail*, and *Meadow-worm* well scoured, are the best Ground-baits: They will likewise take the *Bob* of both Sorts, the *Cod-bait*, *Water-house*, and *counterfeit Cod-bait*, in clear Water. For *Flies*, the *Salmon* takes the same as the Trout generally does, whether natural or artificial; but the natural Baits are generally taken better than artificial, especially by the small ones. If you put a *Cod-bait* or *Gentle*, either natural or artificial, at the Point of the *Dub-fly* Hook, it will entice the *Salmon-smelt*. *Flies* made for the great *Salmon* are better with four Wings, than with two only; and frequently with six better than with four. And if behind each Pair of Wings, you place a different Colour from the Body of the Fly, it is much better. The Wings must be made standing one before the other, whether four or six. He also loves to have the Wings and Tail long, and both Body and Wings of the most gaudy Colour. Silver-twist and Gold-twist, are good to use in dubbing the Bodies.

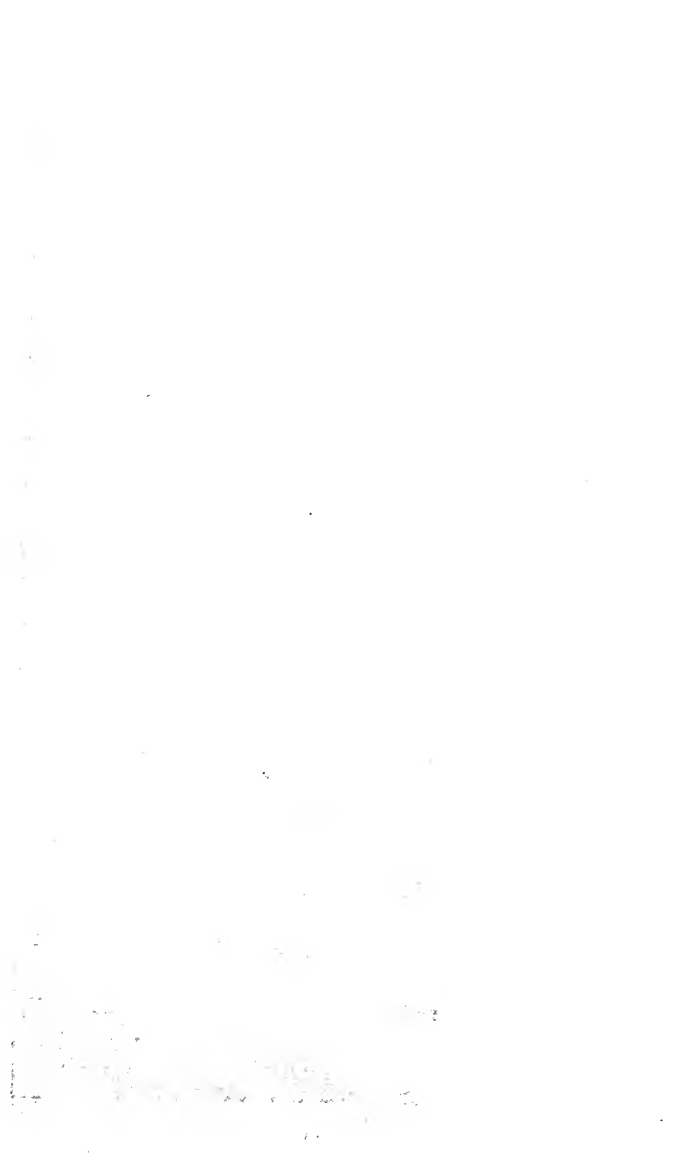
The *Salmon* may be caught at Ground, with running Line or Float, the Bait touching, or as near the Ground as possible; and sometimes he bites well below Mid-Water; at *Ground-baits*. He is also caught with *Dub-fly*, *Cod-bait*, *Water-cricket*, *Oak-worm*, and *counterfeit Cod-bait*, at the Top of the Water, and by the latter within it. The great *Salmon* will sometimes take *Minnows* and *Loaches*, and then you may use the Ring of Wire at the Top of
your

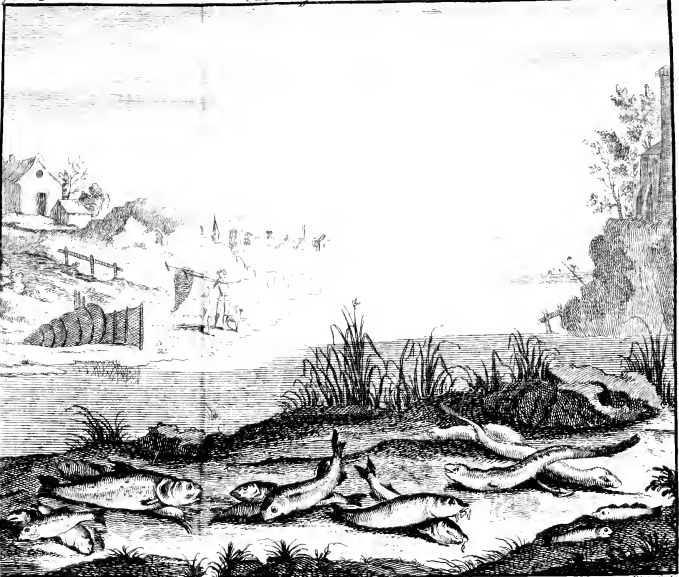
your Rod for the Line to run out, as in Trowling for *Pikes*.

The *Samlet*, or *Salmon-smelt*, or, as they are called by some, *Salmon-fry*, are only so many different Names for *young Salmon*: But there is another Fish called a *Salmon-peale*, which, tho' it seems to be a Species of the *Salmon*, and is equally good, ought to be distinguished from it, as never growing to above 16 Inches in Length. These rise at the *artificial Fly*, but the best Way of taking them is with a *Brandling* well scoured. They delight in deep Holes, near the Stump of a Tree; bite freely, and struggle hard: But you must not be too eager in striking him, and before keep out of Sight. The Time for them is in the Morning and the Evening, and they continue in Season all the Summer. They are principally found in the Rivers of *Dorsetshire* and *Devonshire*.

*The Salmon first of River Fish is nam'd,
Lov'd at his Sport, but more at Table fam'd.
Well are the patient Angler's Pains repaid,
When this fair Leader is his Captive made.
Oft' purling Brooks, but oftner greater Streams,
He haunts; and basks in Phœbus' Mid-day
Beams.
Then, cautious, tempt him, and he'll nimbly rise;
Be strong your Tackle, or you lose the Prize.
Large be your Fly too, with expanded Wings,
Of various Hues: At this he boldly springs.*

Yet





Tench Trout Chub Barbel Eels & Lampreys Gudgeons

H. G. Sulp

*Yet curling Billows should assist the Cheat ;
 Quick-sighted else, he skuns the fatal Bait :
 And clear the Current be, or else he feeds
 Low on the Gravel, or the wasting Weeds.
 Less nice at Bottom, he devouring roves,
 And boldly rushes, as he boldly loves.
 The Lob-worm scour'd attracts him all the Year ;
 But ah ! desist when spawning Time is near.
 The Minnows too his Rage not rarely feel ;
 Try those ; and, if you can, procure the Reel,
 Which freely of itself emits the Line,
 Needfully long, and yet securely fine.
 A Trowl some use, and some the Rod prefer :
 They both are useful, both deserve your Care.*

C H A P. II.

Of the TROUT.

THE Trout is a generous Fish, and in the highest Esteem. He is the Venison of the Waters, and so like the Land Venison, that he comes in and goes out of Season with the Stag and Buck. He feeds clean, is in the swiftest Streams, or on the hardest Gravel ; and may justly contend with all Fresh-water-fish, as the Mullet may with all Sea-fish, for Delicacy of Taste. And as there are some barren Does, which are good in Summer, so are there barren Trouts that are good in Winter ; but there are not many of these ; Trouts being in Perfection in the Month of May, and declining with the Buck. In the Lemax Lake

Lake, or the Lake of *Geneva*, there are *Trouts* of three Cubits long ; and the *Trouts* of this Lake are a great Part of the Merchandize of that famous City. There are other Waters that breed *Trouts* remarkably small, but in great Number ; particularly a little Brook in *Kent* produces them to a Number incredible, and you may take them twenty or thirty in an Hour, but none larger than about the Size of a *Gudgeon*. There are also Rivers, especially near to the Sea, that swarm with a little *Trout*, called a *Samlet* or *Skegger Trout*, that will bite as fast and as freely as *Minnows*. These by some are falsely taken for young *Salmons*, but they never grow to be bigger than a *Herring*.

- In *Kent*, near *Canterbury*, there is a *Trout* call'd a *Fordidge Trout*, from the Name of the Town where it is usually caught, which is esteemed the choicest of Fish. Many of them are near the Bigness of a *Salmon*, but known by their different Colour. In their best Season they cut very white. Scarcely any of these have been known to be caught with an Angle, and when one of them has been taken, it was thought that he bit not for Hunger, but rather in Sport. Many have been so curious as to search into the Bellies of these Fish, to know what the Food was by which they lived ; but have found nothing that might satisfy their Curiosity.

It has been reported that *Grasshoppers* and some Fish have no Mouths, but take in Breath and Nourishment thro' their Gills : That they

they are kept alive by a *Dew*, and *Worms* that breed in their Nests, or some other Ways unknown to us. If this be at all true, which many question, it may be believed of the *Fordidge Trout*, which knows his Times, almost to a Day, of coming into that River out of the Sea, where he lives nine Months in the Year, and fasts three in the River of *Fordidge*. The Townsmen here are very punctual in observing the Time of beginning to fish for them; and boast much of their River on this Account, in like manner as *Sussex* boasts of her *Shelfsey Cockle*, her *Chichester Lobster*, her *Arundel Mullet*, and her *Amerby Trout*.

The better to confirm this Opinion of the *Fordidge Trout's* not feeding in the River, we may reflect that *Swallows*, *Bats*, and *Wag-tails*, which are call'd Birds of Passage, and not seen to fly in *England* for 6 Months of the Year, have been found, even thousands at a Time, in Hollow-trees, or Clay-caves, where they have been observed to live and sleep out the whole Winter without Meat. There is also a kind of *Frog* which hath her Mouth naturally shut up about the End of *August*, and lives so all the Winter.

There is in *Northumberland* a *Trout* called a *Bull-trout*, of a much greater Size than any in the Southern Parts: And in many Rivers that have Communication with the Sea, there are found *Salmon Trouts*, very different from others, both in Shape and Spots.

The *Trout* grows more suddenly than any other Fish. He lives not so long as the *Perch*, and divers other Inhabitants of the Rivers. After he is come to his full Growth, he declines in his Body, and keeps his Bigness, or thrives, only in his Head till his Death. About the Time of his Spawning, he will get almost miraculously through *Weirs* and *Flood-gates*, against the Stream; and through such high and swift Places as are almost incredible. He usually spawns about *October* or *November*, but in some Rivers a little sooner or later: Which is the more observable, because most other Fish spawn in the Spring or Summer, when the Sun hath warmed both the Earth and Water, and made it fit for Generation. He then continues many Months out of Season: So that most other Fishes recover Strength, and grow fat and in Season sooner than the *Trout*.

Till the Sun gets to such a Height as to revive all Nature, this Fish continues sick, lean, and unwholsome: You shall find him with a big Head, and a very lank and thin Body. At the same Time many of them are infested with *Sugs* or *Trout-lice*, which is a kind of Worm, in Shape like a Clove, or Pin with a big Head, and sticks close to the Flesh, and sucks his Moisture. The *Trout* never thrives till he frees himself from them, which is when warm Weather comes on; and then, as he recovers Strength, he gets from the dead still Water, into the sharp Streams and Gravel, and there rubs off these Vermin. After which, as he
grows

grows yet stronger, he gets still into swifter Streams, and there lies on the Watch for any *Fly* or *Minnow* that comes near him. He loves in particular the *May-fly*, which is bred of the *Cod-worm*, or *Caderws*, and these make him usually fatter and better Meat at the End of that Month, than at any other Time of the Year.

It is observed, that usually the best *Trouts* are either red or yellow; though some, as the *Fordige Trout*, are white, and yet equally good. The Female *Trout* hath commonly a less Head, and a deeper Body than the Male; and is also esteemed the best Meat. A Hog Back, and a little Head, to either *Trout*, *Salmon*, or any other Fish, is a Sign that that Fish is in Season.

The *Trout* delights in small purling Streams, that are very swift and clear, running on Stones or Gravel. He feeds whilst strong in the swiftest Streams, but more usually on the Side of the Stream than in the deepest Part of it, unless he be a very large one. He is often found behind a Stone, Block, or some Bank that shoots forth with a Point into the River, where the Stream causes a Whirling of the Water, like the Eddy of the Tide; especially if there be a Shade over his Head, as a Bush, Foam, or hollow hanging Bank, under which he can shelter himself. In the Spring, and latter End of Summer, he plies at the Tail of a Stream; but in *May*, at the upper End. If his Hold be near, he stays long in a Place.

Though

Though as the Weather in Spring grows warmer, so the *Trout* grows stronger, and departs from the deep still Waters, into the sharp Streams and Gravel; yet the best *Trouts* often in Summer, in excessive Droughts, are driven out of the small shallow Streams into the plain Deeps, where you may catch them with Dabbling, or, on a gloomy, cloudy, and windy Day, that furls the Water, with the *Cast-fly*. There are seldom any Store of *Trouts* in Rivers that softly glide through plain, level, and champaign Grounds: For they generally live nearer the Source, or Spring-head of Rivers.

If there be Plenty of *Chubs* in any Rivers, one shall catch *Trouts* there only in *March*, *April*, the Beginning of *May* and *September*; because in the four hot Months the *Chubs* come into the Streams, and drive out most of the *Trouts*.

Trouts in their Season are very nimble, and will strive long and vigorously for their Lives, ruuning among Roots, Weeds, or any thing to entangle or break the Line. They like a large Bait at the Ground. *Flies* they take most at top of the Water, or sometimes within two or three Inches of it. With *Minnow* or *Loach* they are caught within a Foot of the Surface, and sometimes lower by Trowling. Some esteem the *Salmon* to be no other than a *Sea-Trout*; because of his small Difference in Shape, Nature, and Qualities, from the *Trout* that lives continually in the fresh Waters.

In the River *Kennet*, near *Hungerford* in *Berkshire*, there is great Plenty of *Trouts* remarkably large and good. The *Stower* in *Kent*, which runs through *Canterbury*, is said to breed the best *Trouts* in the South-East of *England*. Those in *Wandle*, near *Cashalton* in *Surry*, at *Amerly* in *Suffex*, in *Dove*, *Wye*, *Lathkin*, and *Bradford* in *Derbyshire*, *Ribbel* and *Irk* in *Lancashire*, and in *Usk* and *Wye* in *Monmouthshire*, are accounted excellent *Trouts*. Mr. *Walton* says, that *Hampshire* exceeds all *England*, for swift, shallow, clear, pleasant Brooks, and Store of *Trouts*. The same Opinion Mr. *Cotton* hath of *Derbyshire*, especially of the Rivers *Dove* and *Wye*, and the Brooks *Lathkin* and *Bradford*, which he says breed the reddest, best, and most admirable *Trouts* in *England*. But to speak impartially, none can absolutely determine, in what particular River or Brook are the most and best *Trouts*; because *England* and *Wales* have so many Rivers and Rivulets agreeable to their Nature. This however is certain, that *Trouts* are better or worse, bigger or lesser, according to the Nature of the Soils on which the River runs. Pure, clear, transparent Streams, running on Rocks, Pebbles, or more especially *Flints*, are experimentally found to breed and afford the most delicate and best *Trouts*.

The principal Baits for a *Trout* at the Ground are *Worms*, as the *Brandling*, *Gilt-tail*, *Meadow-worm*, *Tag-tail*, and *Red-worm*; but for a very large one, the *Dew-worm* well-scoured.

The two first are the principal Worms for him all the Year, both in clear and muddy Waters; the others are for Waters discoloured with Rain. The *Cod-bait*, *Clap-bait*, and *Water-cricket*, are either for Top or Bottom, but always to be used in clear Waters only. The *Palmer-fly*, or *Wooll-bed*, and all Sorts of *Flies*, both natural and artificial, are for the Top of the Water; especially the *Palmer-fly*, *Stone-fly*, *Green-drake*, *Ash-fly*, *Fern-fly*, and *Ant-fly*. He likewise will take a factitious *Cod-bait* and *Clap-bait*, that are counterfeited with yellow Wax, Silk, Shammy, or Buff, as directed in Chap. 4. of *natural Baits*. Sometimes also he takes the *Oak-worm*, and *Hawthorn-worm*, both at Top, within the Surface of clear Water.

The *Minnow*, the *Bull-head*, with his Gill Fins cut off, and the *Loach* especially, are excellent Baits, in a clear Water, for great *Trouts*, in *March*, *April*, and *September*, about Midwater, either to trowl with in the Streams, or, on dark, gloomy, windy Days, in the Deeps.

A *Trout* will also take all Sorts of *Bobs*, *Palmers*, *Caterpillars*, *young Frogs*, *Gentles*, *Dores*, the *young Brood of Wasps*, *Humble-bees*, and *Hornets*; also *Beetles* and *Grasshoppers*, their Legs and uppermost Wings cut off. As the *Brandling*, *Gilt-tail*, *Meadow-worm*, *Tag-tail*, *Red-worm*, and *Dew-worm*, are the best Worms for the *Ground-Angle*, to be suited respectively to the Temperature and Colour of the River; so is the *Cod-bait*, *Clap-bait*, *Water-cricket*, *Palmer-worm*, *Stone-fly*, *Green-drake*,

drake, Oak-fly, Fern-fly, Ant-fly, and Artificial Fly, the best for the *Trout* at the Top of the Water when clear. Of each of these particular Baits, see more in the Chapters before referred to.

The Way to angle for *Trouts* at Ground, is with the Running-Line without any Float, but with one or two small Plummetts of Lead. They may be also caught by Float-Angling at Ground, or at Mid-water by Trowling, and at Top of the Water by dibbing and the *Cast-fly*; all which Ways we shall describe hereafter. But let this be observed in general, that when you angle in a clear Water, either for *Trouts, Graylings, or Salmon-smelts*, if you have so much Dexterity as to do it with a single Hair for two Links next your Hook, you will certainly catch three *Trouts* for one, against any that angle with three Hairs next the Hook. And tho' you may now and then lose a great *Trout* by his breaking your Line, yet if you had not been so small tackled, ten to one he had never bit, and the Number of Bites will compensate the Loss. You may fish with less Hazard at Bottom than at Top with fine Tackle, because a *Trout* at *Fly* shoots with a rapid Agility at your Bait, and from you when he hath taken it, with his Head generally downwards; but at the Ground, or Mid-water, he takes the Bait gently, and glides away far more leisurely. Likewise he takes less notice of a thick Line at Top than at Bottom, by reason of his Eagerness. The ex-

cellent Proportion, Shape, Length, true Plying, Gentleness, Freedom, and well Mounting of the Hazle-Rod for clear Waters, contributes much to your Success in this Way, as well as your own Freedom from Rashness and Impatience: And if your Hair be strong, you may easily master a *Trout* thirteen Inches long with a single Hair next your Hook, especially if you have Water-room, and be unmolested with Wood or Trees.

From the Middle of *April* till the End of *August*, a *Trout* bites best in a muddy rising Water, or in a Water that is clearing after a Flood, or in dark, gloomy, cloudy, or windy Weather. His Time in the Morning is from Sun-rising till about half an Hour after Ten o'Clock, and from about two o'Clock in the Afternoon till Sun-set, and oftentimes in the Evening: But nine o'Clock in the Forenoon, and three in the Afternoon, are his most constant Hours of biting, either at Ground or *Fly*, as the Water suits. In *March*, the Beginning of *April*, *September*, and Part of *October*, (for you ought not to angle for *Trouts* from the Middle of *October*, till at least the End of *February*) the Time is from about an Hour after Sun-rising, till almost Sun-set, and especially in warm, Sun-shiny Weather, and the Middle Part of the Day. *March*, *April*, *May*, and Part of *June*, are his chief Months; though he bites well in *July*, *August*, and *September*. After a Shower in the Evening, he rises well
at

at Gnats: And in the Evening of a hot Day in Summer, you may have Sport with Dipping.

In little Brooks that fall into larger Rivers, where the Tide comes up only in fresh Waters, or Waters a little brackish; if you begin at the Mouth of such Brooks, just as the Tide comes in, and go up with the Head of the Tide, and return with the Ebb, you may take many good *Trouts*; and if the Tide do not foul the Water, they will rise at the *Fly*.

In small clear Brooks, if you come immediately after a Shower that hath raised the Water, or just as any Mill-water begins to come down, and so proceed with the Course of the Current, *Trouts* will bite eagerly, because expecting the Water to bring down Food with it, they come forth to seek it. But in small Brooks or Rivers, when the Mills stand, and pen up the Water, little or no Sport is to be expected at Ground, and not much with *Fly*; for the *Trout* at such Time is fearful, and dares scarce venture out of his Hold.

When in Angling for *Salmon* or *Trout*, you all Day long have had little or no Sport, next Night, especially at the Beginning of it, till near Mid-night, they will not fail to bite freely, either at Ground or *Fly*, if the Weather be not nipping cold, or frosty.

When you angle for *Trouts*, you need not make above three or four Trials in one Place; for before that he will either make an Offer, or not stir at all.

When Rains raise the Rivers, and keep them for some Time above their ordinary Height, *Trouts* leave the largest Rivers, and retire into such small Brooks as are almost dry in hot Summers; and in such Brooks you should then angle for them. They generally quit the great Rivers at *Michaelmas*, and go into small Rivulets to spawn, and are frequently there destroyed by idle and disorderly Fellows, with groping or otherwise, which does more Injury to the Breed of Fish, than all the Summer's Angling.

When you angle for *Trout* or *Salmon*, let your Bait drag as little as may be, though for *Trout* it must however touch the Ground. Yet some advise to angle with a Float, that may only keep it near the Bottom without touching; which Method has been found successful, but not so often as the other, unless you bait with *Cod-bait*, *Clap-bait*, or *Cricket-bait*. It is a standing Rule, that where you catch several *Minnows* successively, no *Trouts* will be found at that Time: The *Minnows* however that you take, may be made useful at a proper Stand: For you may bait either with them or small *Loach*. Take a large-sized Hook, and put it in at his Mouth, and out at his Gill; then having drawn the Hook two or three Inches through, put it again into his Mouth, and the Point and Beard out at his Tail, then draw your Line strait, and close the *Minnow's* Mouth that no Water may get in, which you may do with a Stitch. Or you
may

may fasten some Hog's Bristles under the Silk, leaving the Points almost half an Inch standing out towards the Line, which will keep him from slipping back. This done, try how it will turn, by drawing it cross the Water, or against the Stream, and if it do not answer your Expectation, move the Tail a little to the Right or Left, till it turns nimbly; otherwise you will catch nothing. You may also have a Swivel or Turn in this Way, aswell as for *Pikes*, placed about a Yard or more from the Hook, without any Lead on your Line. You must continually draw your Bait up the Stream, within half a Foot, or a Foot of the Superficies of the Water. Always angle this Way in a clear Water, and in the Stream, or on very windy Days that will furl the Water, in the plain Deeps; more especially in the Months of *March, April, September* and *October*. You may angle thus also for the *Pike* and *Perch*.

*To catch the Trout, the Angler's chief De-
light,*

*Tread softly, and be sure keep out of Sight,
Or the shy Fish will baulk thy Appetite.
Nice as thy Hopes too be thy Rod and Line,
Nice be thy Flies, and cast exactly fine.
Nor Rod nor Line should want Proportion fit,
Full six Yards each, if so the Stream permit:
Taper and light, as long, from Hand to Hook,
If with the Flies or in a chrystal Brook:*

Or ev'n should rising Mud the Stream infest,
 Yet still the finer, you succeed the best :
 But here good Judgment is the surest Test.

Your Tackle ready, next exert you Care,
 To cast your Line distinguishingly fair.
 If on the Surface first the Links should light,
 The Fish spring out, nor soon retrieve their
 Fright :

But if the Bait, sudden the Wantons rise,
 Voracious, eager, and become your Prize.
 If short he cuts, next Throw besure beware ;
 He saw too much ; the Angler stood too near :
 But if no Shadow on the Surface fall,
 You quickly speed, or speed not there at all.

The Worm at no Time can your Pleasure
 fail,
 Unless the boundless Floods or Winds prevail,
 Or Winter's Icy Hands the Stream assail.
 When milky-white the thicken'd Current
 shows,
 From Mills, or Rains, or artful Over-flows,
 Strong Lines, Rods, Hooks, and any Worms
 are chose.

The troubled Streams the treach'rous Snares
 disguise,
 And, trusting to his Sight, the greedy Victim
 dies.

But still prefer the chrystal Brook, and chuse
 Arms all genteel and neat, and fit for Use ;
 Nor the long Taper-Rod and single Hair re-
 fuse.

Your

Your Hook, when cover'd with the Brand-
 ling's-Tail, }
 His Head dejected, will but rarely fail ; }
 And oft' the Cadews, manag'd well, prevail. }

C H A P. III.

Of the Umber or Grayling.

NEXT to the Trout I place the Umber or Grayling, which are thought by some to differ, as well as the Herring and Pilchard. But tho' they may do so in other Nations, those in England seem to differ in nothing but their Names ; unless, with some, we appropriate the Name of Umber to a large Grayling only, as the large Jack is called a Pike. They are of a Trout Kind ; and in Switzerland are esteemed the choicest of all Fish. In Italy the Grayling is so highly valued in the Month of May, that he is sold at a much higher Price than any other Fish. The French, who despise the Chub, value the Umber or Grayling so highly, that they say he feeds on Gold, and that many have been caught in their River Loire, out of whose Bellies Grains of Gold have been taken. Some think that this Fish feeds on Water-thyme, and that he smells of it at his first taking out of the Water ; just as our Smelts have the Odour of Violets at their first being caught.

It has been observed, that the Salmon, the Grayling, the Trout, and all Fish that live in

clear and sharp Streams, are made by Nature of the most exact Shape and delightful Colours, as if purposely to invite us to feast on them with Pleasure. Whether this be true or not, it is certain that all who write of the *Umber*, declare him to be very medicinal. The Fat of this Fish being set with a little Honey a Day or two in the Sun, in a little Glass, is thought excellent against Redness or Swarthiness, or any Thing that breeds in the Eyes. Some take him to be called *Umber* from the *Latin Umbra*, a Shadow, on Account of his swift Swimming or Gliding out of Sight, more like a Shadow than a Fish. *St. Ambrose*, Bishop of *Milan*, calls him the *Flower-Fish*, or *Flower of Fishes*; and he was so far in love with him, that he would not pass him over without the Honour of a long Discourse.

The *Grayling*, or *Umber*, grows not to the Bigness of a Trout: For the largest of them do not usually exceed eighteen Inches. He lives in such Rivers as the *Trout* does, and is commonly taken with the same Baits, and after the same Manner. He is very gamesome at a Fly, and, being much simpler, is also much bolder than the *Trout*. He lurks close all the Winter, but is very brisk after the Middle of *April*, thro' all the hot Months. His Shape is very fine; his Flesh white; his Teeth, those little ones that he has, are in his Throat; yet he has a very tender Mouth, and is oftner lost after being hooked than any other Fish. Though there are many *Graylings* in the

the Rivers *Dove*, *Trent*, and others of less Note, particularly in that which runs by *Salisbury*, yet he is not so common a Fish as the *Trout*.

Graylings are in Season all the Year, but principally in *December*, when they are black about the Head, Gills, and down the Back, and have their Belly of a daak-grey, dappled with black Spots. The *Grayling's* Flesh, even in his worst Season, is firm, white, will easily calver, and is excellent Meat; but when at best, little inferior to any *Trout*. He is a very swift Swimmer, {but dead-hearted after he is hooked; bites freely and often at the same Fly, if not pricked.

When you angle for him within Water, his Bait by no means must drag on the Ground, he being a Fish that usually swims nearer the Middle of the Water, and lies always loose, and more apt to rise than descend. Let your Bait be at least six or nine Inches from the Bottom, and to that End use a Float of Cork, rather than the Running Line. His principal Ground-baits are the *Brandling*, *Gilt-tail*, *Tag-tail*, the *Meadow-worm* well scoured, *Cold-baits*, *Bark-worm*, and *Flag-worm*; and at the Top he may be taken either with natural or artificial *Flies*, or with the *Earth-bob*, or *Clap-bait*.

*See how the Umber shoots along the Stream,
Swift as the Shadow, whence he has his Name.*
The

156 *The BRITISH ANGLER. P. II.*
The Trout's Companion both in Feed and Soil,
But simpler much, and taken with less Toil.
Tho' oft' you miss him, he again will rise,
And, after many Baulks, become an easy Prize.

C H A P. IV.

Of the Pike, Jack, or Luce.

AS the *Salmon* is called the King, so the *Luce, Pike, or Jack*, is surnamed the Tyrant of the fresh Waters. It has been a vulgar Opinion, that many of these Fish are produced without Generation, of a certain Vegetable, called *Pickerel-weed*. *Gesner* says, this Weed and other glutinous Matter, with the Help of the Sun's Heat in some particular Months, and in Ponds adapted for it by Nature, are changed into *Pikes*. But notwithstanding the Testimony of so learned a Man, this Notion of equivocal Production is now universally exploded, from unquestionable Experiments. There are no *Pikes* bred after this Manner, and tho' some of them are brought into Ponds by Ways that are past our finding out, we may however be sure that they have Generation like that of other Animals.

The great Lord *Bacon*, in his History of Life and Death, observes the *Pike* to be the longest-lived of any fresh Water Fish, and yet he computes his Age to be not usually above forty Years. Others think it to be not more than ten Years. But the learned *Gesner*, before



Roach

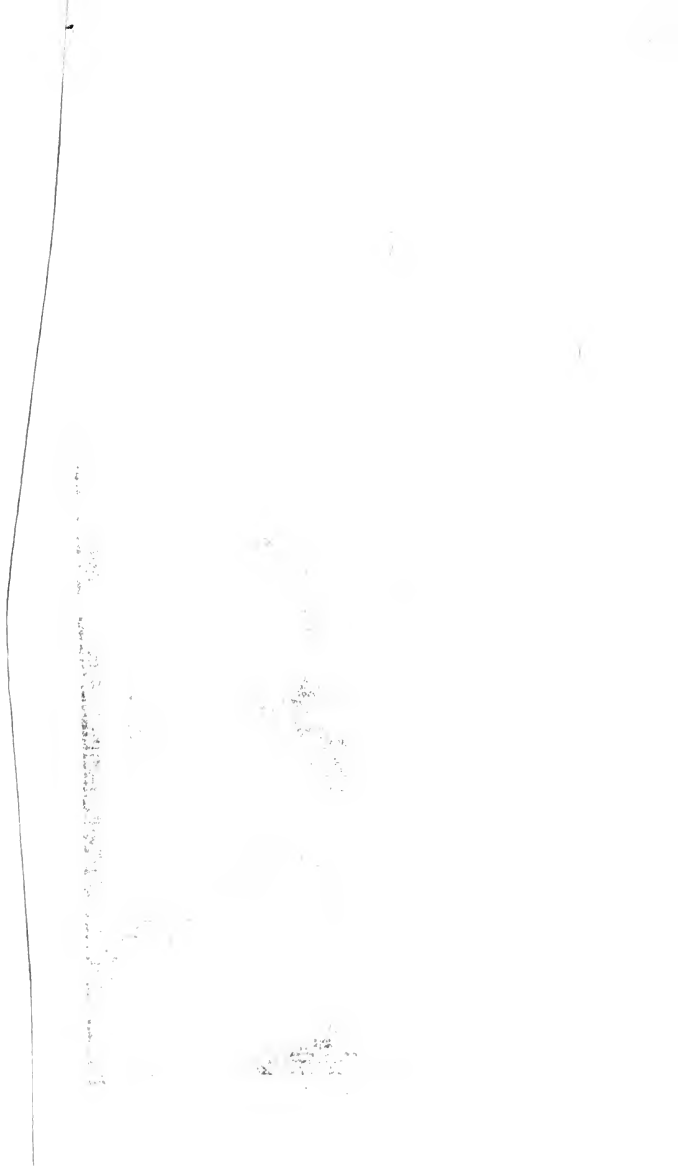
Belt Sculp

Breme

Pikes

Eel-Pout

Roach



fore mentioned, speaks of a *Pike* taken in *Sweden* in the Year 1449, with a Ring about his Neck, declaring that he was put into that Pond by *Frederick* the Second, more than two hundred Years before he was last taken; unless the Inscription in that Ring, being *Greek*, was mis-interpreted by then Bishop of *Worms*, a Thing not in the least unlikely. It is observed, that the very old and great *Pikes* have in them more of Grandeur than Goodness; the smaller, and especially the middle-sized, being by the choicest Palates taken for the best Meat; whereas on the contrary, the Eel is observed to be the better for Age and Bigness.

The Figure of the *Pike's* Body is very long; his Back broad, and almost square, altogether equal to the lowest Fins. His Head is lean and very bony; his Snout long like the Beak of a Duck, and his lower Jaw far longer than his upper, having many Teeth, not orderly disposed, but in large Ranks. His Eyes are of a Golden Colour, and very quick-sighted. His Belly is always white; but his Back and Sides are of a black speckled with yellow, if he be fat; tho' the Sides are white and pale in a thin lean Fish. His Ventricle is large and capacious, and his Throat short. Some grow faster, some slower, according to the Diversity of their Water and Food. River Fish grow much faster than Pond Fish, unless the Pond be very large, and have a good Stream running through it. One spawned in a clear
spring-

springing Brook in *March*, will be eighteen Inches long the next *March*. A River *Pike* grows fast till he arrives at twenty-four or near thirty Inches in Length: Then he stands a little more at Stay, and spreads himself in Thickness: Afterwards he will be much longer growing to his full Bigness, which is about forty-five Inches, from thirty Inches, then he was increasing to the Length of thirty.

In storing of Ponds with *Pike*, put in all your Fish of a Bigness; for a *Pike* of thirty Inches will devour one of fifteen. Some grow more in Length, others in Thickness, which latter Sort are the firmest Fishes: For a lean slender *Pike*, tho' he seem to advance in Length, is commonly in a decaying Condition, by reason of some outward Wound from the Otter, or some stronger of his own Kind, or an inward Prick by the Hook, or some other Casualty. Yet even in this Condition, he will be as hungry and greedy as ever.

The *Pike* loves a still, shady, and unfrequented Place; sandy, chalky, or clay Bottoms; still Pools full of Fry; and, the better to surprize his Prey unawares, shelters himself amongst Bull-rushes, Weeds, Water-docks or Bushes. He often bites about the Middle of the River or Pond, and always about Mid-water; the Bait generally being in a continual and gentle Motion, and never to be less than a Foot from the Ground.

In *April*, *May*, *June*, and the Beginning of *July*, he bites best early in the Morning,
and

and late in the Evening, and seldom to any Purpose in the Night at any Time of the Year. He bites most freely in a clear Water, and a gentle Gale; in still Places usually, or at least in a gentle Stream. Three o'Clock in the Afternoon is his best Hour in *July, August, September, and October.* In *September,* and all the Winter Months, he bites all the Day long, but always best about the Middle of the Afternoon, the Water being clear, and the Day windy. Indeed, both in the Winter and Summer, the chief Sport is in a dark, cloudy, gloomy, and windy Day: But in a muddy Water he bites not well, except after a Flood, when the River begins to clear. *Pikes* sometimes grow to forty five Inches in Length.

The *Pike* takes all Sorts of Baits, except *Fly*; but his principal Baits are large *Gudgeons, Roaches, small-Dace, large-Minnows, Loaches, Bull-heads, and Bleaks.* In *July* he may be taken with young *Frogs, Salmon-smelts* no bigger than a *Gudgeon, Smelts* or *Sparlings* that are small, fresh, and sweet, and well fastened on the Hook. *Fat Bacon* is used by some for a Bait for him, in the Winter Months. A young *Trout, a young Jack, a Perch,* with his back Fins cut off, and a Piece of an *Eel,* are good Baits likewise for the *Pike*; but be sure that all your Fish-baits be very fresh and sweet when you use them.

All *Pikes* that live long prove chargeable to their Keepers, because their Life is supported
by

by the Death of so many other Fish, even those of their own Species. This, as I before observed, has made some Writers call him the Tyrant of the Rivers, or the fresh Water Shark or Wolf, on Account of his bold, voracious Disposition; his Appetite being so keen, that it is affirmed, a Man going to a Pond, where a *Pike* had already devoured all the other Fish, to water his Mule, had his Beast bit by the Lips; to which the *Pike* hung so fast, that the Creature drew him out of the Water, and by that new Way of Angling, the Owner of the Mule became Master of the *Pike*. Instances are even produced, of their having seized, in pressing Necessity, on the Feet and Legs of Men or Women, who have gone into the Waters.

But without carrying our Credulity too far, we have been assured by those who have kept tame Otters, that they have known a *Pike* in extreme Hunger fight with an Otter, for a *Carp* which the Otter had caught, and was then bringing out of the Water. And it is too well known to be doubted, that a *Pike* will devour a Fish of his own Kind, that shall be bigger than his Belly or Throat will receive; swallowing first a Part of him, and letting the other Part remain in his Mouth till the swallowed Part be digested, and then swallowing that other Part which was in his Mouth, till he has gorged the Whole. Like as the Ox, and some other cloven-footed Beasts, take not their Meat out of their Mouth immediately into their

their Belly, but first into some Place betwixt, where they masticate and digest it by Degrees, which is called *Chewing the Cud*. *Pikes* will even bite when they are not hungry, provided a tempting Bait comes in their Way.

The *Pike* will eat venomous Things, in particular some Kind of *Frogs* that are so esteemed, and yet live without being injured by them: Whence it has been conjectured that he has in him a natural Antidote against all Poison. He has a wonderful natural Heat, that can digest and exclude every Kind of Fish-Flesh, without being sick. He is said never to eat the venomous *Frog*, till he has first killed, and then so thoroughly washed her, by moving her up and down in the Water, that he may devour her without Danger. *Gesner* affirms, that a *Polish* Gentleman faithfully assured him, that he had seen two young *Geese* at one Time in the Belly of a *Pike*: And there is no doubt but this Fish, in the Height of his Hunger, will snap at and devour a Dog that swims in a Pond, there having been Examples of his so doing.

The *Pike* has the Character of a solitary bold Fish: Solitary, because he always swims and reposes himself alone, and never in Shoals, or with Company, as *Roach* and *Dace*, and most other Fish do; and bold, because he fears not a Shadow, nor to see or be seen of any Body, like the *Trout* and *Chub*, and all other Inhabitants of the Rivers.

The Male *Pike* is better than the Female, which is out of Season a great Part of the Summer. The *Pike's* Flesh is whiter, finer, and every way more excellent than that of the Carp. The Jaw-bones, Hearts, and Galls of *Pikes* are reported by *Gesner* to be very Medicinal. He says they stop Blood, abate Fevers, cure Agues, oppose and expel the Infection of the Plague, and are many Ways useful for the Good of Mankind. But he observes, that the Biting of a *Pike* is venomous, and hard to be cured. His Spawn provokes Stool, and is used for that Purpose by the Country People.

The *Pike*, being a Fish of Prey, breeds but once a Year ; whereas other Fish that are liable to be destroyed, are observed to breed much oftner. Thus there are tame *Pigeons* which sit almost every Month, whilst the *Hawk*, a Bird of Prey, breeds but once in twelve Months. In this the Wisdom of Providence is very conspicuous, for its Care in the Preservation of every Species of Creatures. The Time of Spawning for the *Pike* is usually about the End of *February*, and sometimes in *March*, as the Weather proves colder or warmer. A He and a She *Pike*, at this Time, will usually go together out of a River into some Ditch or Creek, where the Spawner casts her Eggs, and the Melter hovers over her during the Action, but touches her not. The best of *Pikes* are noted to be in *Rivers* ; next are those in great *Ponds* or *Meers*, and the worst in Ponds of a smaller Dimension.

There

There is a wonderful Antipathy betwixt the *Pike* and some *Frogs*, the Effects of which would be almost incredible, were they not well attested. But the following Story, related by *James Dubravius*, a *Bohemian Bishop*, in his Book of *Fishes* and *Fish-Ponds*, and from him quoted by our Countryman *Watson*, is too authentick and remarkable to be here omitted. As *Dubravius* and *Thurzo*, another *Bishop*, were walking by a large Pond in *Bohemia*, they saw a *Pike* lie very sleepily and quiet by the Shore Side, which a *Frog* perceiving, leaped upon his Head, and having exprest the utmost Malice by his swoln Cheeks and starting Eyes, stretched out his Legs and embraced the *Pike's* Head, and immediately extending them to his Eyes, with his Claws and Teeth attacked those tender Parts. The *Pike*, full of Anguish, glides up and down in the Water, and rubs himself against the Weeds, or whatever he thought might quit him of his Enemy: But all in vain; for the *Frog* continued to ride triumphantly, and to bite and torment the poor Fish till his Strength failed, and then both the Assailant and Assailed sunk together to the Bottom of the Water. Presently after the *Frog* appeared again at the Top and croaked, seeming to triumph like a Conqueror; and then he retired to his secret Hole. The *Bishop*, who had beheld the Battle, called his Fisherman to fetch his Nets, and if possible to catch the *Pike*, that they
might

might inform themselves fully of what had happened. The *Pike* was accordingly drawn forth, with both his Eyes eaten out : And when the two Bishops began to wonder at this Spectacle, the Fisherman declared there was no Ground for their Surprize, and assured them he was certain that *Pikes* were often so served.

Mr. *Walton* argues for the Probability of this Story from what is observed of the *Fishing-Frog*, called by the *Dalmatians* the *Water-Devil*, and of the Cunning of some of our own *Frogs* here in *England*, who are so fearful and cautious of the *Water-snake*, that when they swim in a Place where they expect to meet with him, they get a Reed across in their Mouths, which, if they encounter their Enemy, secures the feeble Animals from his Strength and Malice, till they get away by swifter Swimming.

But to proceed : The *Pike* usually feeds on *Fish* or *Frogs*, and sometimes on a Weed of his own, called *Pickerel-weed*. I have already taken notice of the vulgar Opinion, that *Pikes* are bred of this Weed. They who maintain it assert, that where none have been put into Ponds, yet they have been there found in Abundance ; and that there has always been Plenty of that Weed in such Ponds. But this, admit it be true, is far from being a sufficient Argument against an universal Law of Nature, which holds in Vegetables as well as Animals, That Nothing can be produced but by the Seed of its own Species. Even the Flies in corrupted Flesh are no otherwise the Effect
of

of that Corruption, than as it serves them for a proper Nest and Nourishment. And doubtless, by Parity of Reason, there will be more *Pikes* found where there is a Plenty of this their favourite Weed, than in any other Place, without the Weed's contributing in the least to their original Production.

As to fishing for the *Pike*, you may do it either with a *Ledger* or a *Walking-bait*. We call that a *Ledger-bait* which is fixed, or made to rest in one certain Place when we are absent from it; and that a *Walking-bait* which we take with us, and have ever in Motion. The best *Ledger* is a living Bait, tho' a dead one may sometimes catch, whether it be a *Fish* or a *Frog*. That you may make them live the longer, observe these Directions.

A *Roach* or *Dace* is the best and most tempting of all Fish-baits; but a *Perch* is the longest-lived on a Hook. Having cut off the Fin on his Back, which may be done without hurting him, you must take a Knife, and make an Incision betwixt the Head and the Fin on the Back, or such a Scar as you may put the arming Wire of your Hook into it, with as little Bruising of the Fish as Art and Practice will enable you to do: Then carrying your arming Wire along his Back, quite to, or near the Tail of your Fish, betwixt his Skin and his Body, draw it out at another Notch near his Tail: Then tie him about it with Thread, but no harder than to prevent hurting the Fish; which the better to avoid, some have a kind
of

of Probe to open the way, for the more easy Entrance and Passage of their Wire: But Time and a little Experience will teach the Practice of these Things better than Words; and therefore to those we refer the young Angler.

There are two principal Kinds of *Frogs*, which may be distinguished by the Names of a *Flesh* and a *Fish-frog*. By *Flesh-frogs* are meant *Frogs* that breed and live on the Land; and of these there are several Species of various Colours, some being speckled, some greenish, some blackish, and others brown. The green *Frog*, which is a small one, is taken to be venomous; and so is the *Paddock* or *Frog-paddock*, which usually breeds and inhabits on the Land; and is very large and bony, especially the She *Frog* of that Kind: Yet these will sometimes come into the Water, but not frequently. By *Fish-frogs* are understood those that breed and live in the Water, which are not venomous, especially the right *Water-frog*, which about *February* or *March* breeds in the Slime of Ditches, by blackish Eggs laid in that Slime. At this their Breeding-Time the He and She *Frogs* are observed to continue long in Conjunction, some say many Days, and to croak and make a Noise, which the *Land* or *Paddock-frog* never does. The best of these *Water-frogs* for a *Pike*, is the yellowest that you can get, for that the *Pike* will soonest take: And that your *Frog* may continue long alive, put your Hook into his Mouth, (which you may easily do from the Middle of *April* to

Au-

August, when the Frog's Mouth closes up, and continues so for at least 6 Months, and out at his Gills, and then with a fine Needle and Silk fasten the upper Part of his Leg with only one Stitch to the Arming-wire of your Hook, or tie it gently above the upper Joint to the armed Wire, being careful to hurt him as little as possible.

Having fastened your Ledger-hook to a Line, which should not be less than twelve or fourteen Yards long; you must fasten that Line to any Bough near the Hole where a *Pike* is suspected to lie, or to have a Haunt, and then wind on a forked Stick all your Line except half a Yard, or somewhat more, and split that forked Stick with such a Notch at one End of it, as may keep any more of the Line from unravelling from about the Stick, than just what you intend. Chuse your forked Stick to be of that Bigness as may keep the Bait from pulling it under Water till the *Pike* bites, and then the *Pike* having pulled out the Line from the Cleft in which it was gently fastened, he will have Line enough to go to his Hold and pouch the Bait. If you would have your Ledger-bait to keep in a fixed Place, undisturbed by Wind or other Accidents, which may drive it to the Shore-side, (for it is likeliest to catch a *Pike* in the midst of the Water,) hang a small Plummet of Lead, a Stone, a Piece of Tile, or a Turf in a String, and cast it into the Water with the forked Stick, to hang upon
the

the Ground, as a kind of Anchor to keep the Stick from moving.

Or when you bait your Hooks thus with live Fish or Frogs, and in a windy Day, fasten them to a Bough or Bundle of Straw, that by the Help of the Wind they may be drove cross some *Pond* or *Mere*, and you may stand still on the Shore and see Sport enough immediately, if there be any Quantity of *Pikes* in the Place. These live Baits may likewise make Sport, if you tie the Line about the Body or Wings of a *Goose* or *Duck*, and drive her over the *Pond*. One may also fasten them to Bladders, or Boughs, or Bundles of Hay, or Rushes, to swim down a River, whilst the Sportsman walks quietly on the Shore, in Expectation of his Game. This sort of Fishing is frequently call'd *Huxing*.

As to Fishing with a dead Bait, a little Experience, in Mr. *Walton's* Opinion, will make any one perfect in it. The baiting one's Hook with a dead *Gudgeon* or a *Roach*, and moving it up and down the Water, is too easy a Thing, according to him, to need many Directions. But the following Receipt, which has been esteem'd a great Secret in this Diverſion, he thought, might be worth communicating to the Learner.

Diffolve Gum of *Ivy* in the Oil of *Spike*, and with it anoint your dead Bait ; then cast it into a proper Place, and when it has lain a short Time at the Bottom, draw it towards the Top of the Water, and so up the Stream. When it
is

is more than likely that you have a *Pike* follow with uncommon Eagerness.

But with all due Deference to the Judgment of so experienced an Angler, we must affirm that there is much more Art and Experience requisite in trowling or snapping with a dead Bait, than in any Thing he has mentioned concerning the Ledger-bait, besides that the Practice of the former is less exceptionable, and more becoming the fair Angler.

Trowling for Pike is a very pleasant Diversion, and the Trowl may be bought ready made; only let it have a Winch to wind it up withal. You must always angle with it in clear Water, and, if possible, on a windy Day. Some prefer a single Hook before the double *Pike-hook*, and bait with a *Minnow*, as well to catch *Perch* as *Pike*.

Your Tackle must be strong, your Rod long, and very slender at Top, where you must place a small slender Ring for your Line to run through. Let your Line be Silk, for at least two Yards next the Hook, and the rest four or six Folds of the very best flaxen Thread curiously twisted, 20 or 30 Yards long; your Hook double, and strongly armed with Wire, for above a Foot. Then with a Probe or Fish Needle, you must draw the Wire in at the Fishes Mouth, and out at his Tail, that so the Hook may lie in the Mouth of the Fish, and both the Points on either Side. Upon the Shank of the Hook, fasten some very smooth Lead, that it may go into the Fishes Mouth,

and sink her with the Head downwards, as though she had been playing on the Top of the Water, and were returning to the Bottom. Your Bait, as before observed in general, may be a large *Gudgeon*, a *Bleak*, a *Minnow*, a small *Trout*, a small *Roach* or *Dace*, a small *Salmon-smelt*, a *Perch* with his back Fins cut off, a Piece of an *Eel*, a *Loach*, or sometimes a *Frog* in Hay-time. Your Hook thus baited, you must tie the Tail of the Fish close and fast to the Wire ; or else, with drawing to and again, the Fish will rend off the Hook : Or, which is neater, with a Needle and strong Thread, stitch through the Fish on either Side of the Wire, and tie it very fast. Weeds are destructive to Baits, especially when they are strong and tough ; so that if you be not careful in tying the Tail of the Bait fast to the Joint of the Wire, the Weeds will spoil it before the *Pike* come.

Your Tackle being thus ready, cast your Fish up and down in such Places as you know the *Pike* frequents, observing still that he sink some Depth before you pull him up again. When the *Pike* comes, if it be not sunk deep, you may usually see the Water move, at least you may feel him : Then slack your Line, and give him Length enough to run away to his Hold, whither he will make directly, and there pouch or swallow the Bait, ever beginning with the Head. Thus let him lie till you see the Line move in the Water, and then you may certainly conclude, he hath pouched
the

Bait, and is ranging out for more. Then, with the Trowl, wind up your Line, till you think you have it almost strait; and then, with a small Jerk, hook him, and divert yourself to your Satisfaction.

Some use no Rod at all, but hold the Line in their Hand, with Lead and Float. Others use a very great Hook, which they put at the Tail of the Fish, and when the *Pike* comes, they strike at his first Pull. Others put a strong Thread in at the Mouth of the Bait, and out at one of the Gills, and so over the Head, and in at the other Gill, tying the Bait to the Hook, and leaving a little Length of Thread betwixt the Fish and Hook, that so the *Pike* may turn the Head of the Bait, the better to swallow it; and then, as before, after some Pause, strike pretty smartly. If any Weed hang on your Bait, the *Pike* will refuse it.

February, if it be a dry Season and open, is one of the best Trowling Months. In *March* they spawn and are sick; therefore bite ill. *April*, and until the Middle of *May*, especially if it be cold and windy, is propitious to the Sport, because the Weeds which have lain all the Winter, begin then to erect their Heads. From the Middle of *May* until *September*, it is bad Trowling, by reason of the Weeds. From the Beginning of *September* till *Martinmas*, if you are not disturbed with Rain or Floods, especially the Month of *October*, is

I 2

good;

good ; because the Weeds then fall and rot, and the Fish are fat with the Summer's Feed.

To be a little more particular: When you drop in your Bait, cast it first even before you, then on each Side, and let the third Throw be before you into the Middle : Afterwards, cast about all Places where you conceive your Game lies, or where you can fish without Annoyance of Weeds and Roots. You cannot cast out too far ; but only drop in the Bait, here and there by the Sides, and in Holes that are clear and deep.

Having cast out a fair Throw, it may be twelve, or sometimes twenty Yards, let the Bait have a little Time to sink ; then feel it by drawing gently towards you : For a *Pike* often takes at first Sight, before it gets to the Bottom ; and if you snatch it hastily, you both discourage him, and deprive yourself of your expected Sport. After you have given it an easy Motion towards you, let it have the Liberty of sinking again : Then draw it in softly ; for if you jerk it hastily, he has not Time to lay hold on the Bait. When the Bait comes near the Bank, play it longer there ; first deep, especially if in cold Weather ; afterwards raise it higher and higher, by Degrees, till you have it so near the Top that you see it glister : Then take it out, but not hastily, because he often takes it near the Top.

When a *Pike* is once tired, he will lie watching for the Bait, and catch greedily at it, if he

he does not see you : Therefore keep at a little Distance upon the Bank. Sometimes they leap out of the Water at the Bait ; but then they are so frightened that they will bite no more.

If he takes the Bait greedily at Bottom, and marches up the Stream with it, or strikes cross the River towards his Hold, he will then probably lie still a little Time, while he is pouching; for you may lose all for want of two or three Minutes Forbearance. If it hath lain still a while the second Time, and then runs with it, draw your Line straight, and with your Pole give him an easy Stroke, and so feel him by Degrees, till you come to see him. But if he be furious, let him have Line enough, and give him his full Swing, till he is pacified by losing his Strength.

You must be cautious in Landing a great one ; for if the River be broad, and your Line short, you may easily lose him : For he will launch out with such Violence, that though he cannot break your Line, yet he will tear out his Hold, or even Entrails, if he be there hung : You must therefore have a Landing-Net at hand, to prevent Danger.

If he takes the Bait at Top, and runs fiercely with it into the Deep, and there lies still for some Time, without pouching it, your Remedy is to stir him a little, and make him run, and be more eager. After he hath lain still, and runs with it again, there is no Danger of losing the Fish : For when they leave it, they

commonly throw it up the first Time they lie still. Sometimes, indeed, they take it again after they have left it, and play with it more than at first, and yet after all leave it. A Fish that takes it most greedily at first, and carries it furthest, notwithstanding often forsakes it. The only Way to be even with such, is to use the Snap.

When you have a Bite, and the Fish goes down the Stream, it is commonly a small one: But on the contrary, if he sails slowly upwards with the Bait, it is a Sign of a good one. Greater Fish bite more calmly than the lesser; for the small ones snatch and run away with the Bait without any Deliberation, whereas old Fish are more wary. When the Water is clear, and not very deep, you may see him rise at the Bait and take it, and you will perceive it glister, as it lies cross his Mouth: Thus may you know when he hath pouched, and your Time to strike.

When you have struck him, be sure to have your Line ready and slack, that he may take as much Liberty as he will: For when he finds himself trapan'd with the Hook, he will use all his Might and Cunning to get loose. As you feel him come easily towards you, you may be still drawing, till you feel him make resistance again: Then let him have his Swing till his Fury is over; after which gather your Line to you again till he starts away; and if you can get him to the Top, it will the sooner tire him: For the more he strives and throws him-

himself from you, the sooner will he be weary. After this Manner, by drawing him up, and letting him loose again, you may tame him till you bring him to Shore, and land him by the Net. But in case you be unprovided with this Convenience, beware of attempting to take him out by the Back or Tail, but grasp him by the Head, and put your Fingers into his Eyes. If you lay hold by his Gills, your Fingers may be injured with his Bites, which are venomous.

When you *snap* for the *Pike*, you must give him leave to run a little, and then strike; but always strike the contrary Way to that which he runs. A double-spring Hook is principally, if not only useful in this Way of Angling, and much to be preferred before all Hooks. Angling with the *Trowl* is a surer, at least a more easy Way for a Learner to practise, than the Snap: Besides, the Snap is chiefly useful to take a *Pike*, which often pricking with the Trowl hath made wary and cunning. Such a one is best taken at Snap, and the fittest Time for this Exercise is in *March*, when the *Pike* bites ill, because they spawn then, and are sick.

For this Way of Angling, make a Hole with the Point of your Hook or Probe, in the Fish's Side with which you bait, as near the Middle as you can: Put in your armed Wire, and draw it out at the Mouth, which afterwards sew up with a Needle and Thread. Others use the Probe to draw the arming Wire under

the Skin only, and out at the Bone behind the Gills ; then again under the Gills, and out at the Mouth. This latter Way is by many thought the best, because there is only the Skin to hinder the drawing and piercing of the Hook : Whereas in the former Way, if the *Pike* hold fast, all the Flesh on the Outside of the Fish will be drawn into a Heap or Lump, so thick, that the Hook can hardly reach thro' it to pierce the *Pike's* Chaps.

Observe that tho' the *Pike* hath fed to that Excess that he cannot gorge your Bait, yet will he rise and make many Offers with such a Good-will, that you may often catch him with the Snap.

In angling for the *Pike*, after he hath taken your Bait, if he move slowly, and make no Stop, give him Time, and you will seldom miss him. Cast not the Bait in the same Place above once, or twice at most ; for he commonly takes the Bait at the first or second Throw. If he be still after he hath taken the Bait, gently move your Hand, to try which Way his Head lieth. If you cannot discover that, then strike directly upwards ; otherwise, instead of hooking him, you may pluck the Bait out of his Mouth. If he take it upon the Top of the Water, and lie still, you see which Way his Head lieth, and may order yourself accordingly.

At the Snap your Tackle must be stronger than for the Trowl, in regard you must strike much more forceably. Your best Lines are
made

made of green or sky-coloured Silk. Next are those of green Thread or Hemp. Fasten your Swivel to the End of the Line ; (for you must use a Swivel both at Trawl and Snap) and hook your armed Wire upon the Swivel. Both at Snap and with Trawl, cut away one of the Fins of the Bait close at the Gills ; and another behind the Vent, on the contrary Side : The Bait will play the better.

In casting with the Trawl or at Snap, be sure to raise your Hand a little when you see the Bait ready to fall into the Water. This will prevent the Bait's dashing violently into the Water in its Fall, which frights the *Pike*, tho' he be a bold Fish. After your Bait is in, let it sink a little ; then draw it towards you, near at the Top ; then let it sink again, and so on.

Make your Lead for the Trawl and Snap four-square, and much thicker and shorter than most use. The Square will keep the Hook in the same Place as you set it, and the thick short Lead sinks him with his Head downwards, so that he will not shoot slope-wise, as when the Lead is long.

A larger Bait is most inviting to the *Pike*, but the lesser takes him more surely, being soonest gorged, and the Hook certainly taken in his Mouth both at Snap and Trawl. Two or three Baits will serve all the Day : Put them on before you go to angle, and use one till it be Water-sopt.

Use a large white *Minnow*, or large *Loach*, put on with the Hook in his Mouth, to angle for a *Pike* as you do for a *Trout*; and let your Hook be small. Never use a great Hook with a small Bait, nor a great Bait with a small Hook. You may catch both *Pike* and *Perch*, if you trowl with a *Minnow* or *Loach*, or small *Gudgeon*, and have not too big a Hook. When the Water is transparent, and the Day clear and bright, a large *Gudgeon* is the best Bait for *Pike*: But if the Day be dark or cloudy, *Roach*, *Dace*, or a *Bleak* new taken, are the best Baits that can be made use of.

To angle with a *Minnow*, get a single Hook, long and slender in the Shank; but Lead upon it, as thick near the Bent as will go into the *Minnow's* Mouth: Place the Point of the Hook directly up the Face of the Fish: Let the Rod be as long as you can handsomely manage, with a Line of the same Length; cast up and down, and manage it as when you trowl with any other Bait. If, when the *Pike* hath taken it, he run to the End of the Line before he hath gorged it, do not strike, but hold still only, and he will return back and swallow it. Some esteem a *Minnow* the best with a Trowl, especially if you use a Swivel.

I will just mention two other Ways of taking *Pikes*, because they are frequently practised, tho' not so much by the fair Angler as the two former: These are called *Snaring* and
Hook-

Hooking. In *May, June, and July*, in a clear, calm, hot, gleamy Day, *Pikes* soar on the Water's Surface, or near it: Then fix a Snare or Running-noose of Wire to the End of a strong Packthread, a Yard and a half long, and the other End of the Packthread to a long Pole that is manageable. Your Snare being open, you may observe *Jacks* lie on the Top of the Water, and easily put the Noose over them, and, with a quick and smart Jerk, hoist them to Land.

Or you may, at that Time, take a Line of seven or eight Foot, and arm to it a Hook of the largest Size, having the Shank leaded neatly, that the Weight may guide it at Pleasure, and you may strike the *Pike* with the bare Hook when they go a Frogging into Ditches, and you see them soaring on the Superficies of the Water. Or you may whip four Hooks to such a Line, the Points a Quarter of a Circle distant from each other, and all whipt together.

To catch that Nimrod of the Streams the Pike,

Angler be cautious, nor too rashly strike.

Rods, Lines, and Hooks, are often found too small,

The Tyrant's strong, and rudely forces all.

*A stiff, neat, nine Foot Pole you must prepare,
Which may in sev'ral Things repay your Care :*

*Whether the struggling Prize your Caution ask,
And Landing-Nets fix'd to't facilitate your
Task;*

*Or with fix'd Rings, you further this Design,
By casting finely out your Bait and Line.*

*With this have always Hooks securely strong,
Well-wir'd, and join'd to Lines proportionably
long.*

*A Dace, a Gudgeon, or a Stone-Loach take,
Or, wanting these, an happy Trial make
Of something else of the less usual Kind;*

*As Frogs, or Eels, or Garbadge; for you'll
find
His greedy Appetite will leave your Doubts
behind.*

*Let but your Baits be good, your Lines be
strong,*

*Without Success you cannot tempt him long:
Then give him Gorging Time, and you're secure;
He rarely leaves his Prize, or quits his Pow'r.*

*Perhaps the Day is hot, no Breeze of Wind
Is to your Hope and vain Endeavours kind:
Rise early then, or try your Fortune late;
Or else till more auspicious Minutes wait.*

*When keen the Winds from any Quarter blow,
The Tyrant seldom waits a second Throw.*

*But if the Streams you use are thinly stor'd,
And therefore small's the Pastime they afford;
You then prepare a handsome taper Pole,
As long, if not still longer than the Trowl;
To this a thin, but strong well-twisted Line
Affix, and Hooks both large, and fit for your
Design.*

By frequent Bobbing you deceive his Eyes,
And if your Tackling hold, he's certainly your
Prize,

C H A P. V.

Of the P E R C H.

THE *Perch* is a very good Fish, and bites boldly. He is one of those Fishes of Prey, that, like the *Pike* and *Trout*, carries his Teeth in his Mouth, which is very large. He dares venture to attack and devour several other Kinds of Fish; has a rising or Hog-Back, armed with sharp and stiff Bristles; all his Skin covered over with thick, dry, hard Scales; and his Back, which few other Fish have, adorned with two Fins. The *Perch* is so bold, that he will seize one of his own Kind, even more readily than the *Pike*, that Wolf of the fresh Waters. He is much esteemed in *Italy*, and especially when small. *Gesner* prefers the *Perch* and *Pike* before the *Trout*, or any fresh Water Fish. The *Germans* say proverbially, *More wholesome than a Perch of the Rhine*; and indeed the *River Perch* is so wholesome, that Physicians allow him to be eaten by Persons in Fevers, and by Women in Child-bed. He is deep-bodied, and by Naturalists esteemed very nutritive.

They abound more in the *River Po* in *Italy*, and in the Rivers of *England*, than in any other Parts. They have a Stone in their Brain, which

which in Foreign Countries is sold by the Apothecaries, who hold it to be very medicinal against the Stone in the Reins. These are some of the Commendations bestowed upon the fresh Water *Perch*; yet many affirm the Sea-*Perch*, which is known by having but one Fin on his Back, to be a much better Fish.

The *Perch* grows slowly, yet will sometimes increase to be almost two Foot long: Though his ordinary Length is not above twelve or fourteen Inches. When attacked by the *Pike*, to terrify his Enemy, and save himself, the *Perch* will bristle up his Fins as a Turkey-Cock sometimes erects his Tail; on which Account the *Pike* never meddles with him, unless pressed by extreme Hunger.

The *Perch* loves a gentle Stream of a reasonable Depth, and especially close by a hollow Bank: And though *Salmon*, *Trout*, and *Perch* delight in clear and swift Rivers; pebbly, gravelly Bottoms, or green Weeds; yet *Perches* are sometimes found, but not in such Plenty and Goodness, in slow, slimy, and muddy Rivers, as about *Oxford*.

The *Perch* will not bite at all Seasons of the Year: He is very abstemious in Winter; yet even then he will bite in the Midst of the Day, if it be warm: It is to be observed indeed, that all Fish bite best about the Midst of a warm Day in Winter. In Summer he will bite all the Day long, in cool, gloomy, or windy Weather; yet principally from seven o'Clock in the Forenoon, till after ten, and from about

bout two in the Afternoon till about six, and sometimes later, especially in hot Weather.

If there be thirty or forty of them in a Hole, they may be at one Standing all catched one after another. They are not like the solitary *Pike*, but love to accompany one another, and march together in Troops; as all Fish that have Scales are observed to do.

The *Perch* is very strong, and will contend hard and long for his Life. He spawns but once a Year, and that about *February* or *March*.

He will bite at a *Worm*, a *Minnow*, or a little *Frog*; of which you may find many in Hay-time: Of *Worms*, the *Lobworm*, or the *Brandling*, I take to be the best, being well scoured in Moss or Fennel; and next the *Worm* that lies under a Cow-turd with a blewish Tail. He will also take the *Red-worm* and the *Dew-worm*. If you angle for a *Perch* with a *Minnow*, it is best your Bait be alive, sticking your Hook through his Back Fin: Or a *Minnow* may be hooked in his upper Lip, and suffered to swim up and down about Mid-water, or a little lower, still keeping him to about that Depth, by a Float, which ought not to be a very little one. The same Method is to be observed when you fish with a small *Frog*, your Hook being fastened through the Skin of his Leg, towards the upper Part of it.

When the *Perch* bites, be sure you give him Time enough to pouch the Hook, for there was scarce ever any Angler that gave him too much. Some, in angling for *Perch*, will suffer

suffer their Bait to touch the Ground, especially when they fish with a *Worm*. The Turning of the Water, or Eddy, in a good Gravel-Scour, is an excellent Place for Sport. Your Tackle should be strong, because in fishing for *Perch*, *Pikes* are often taken. Bait the Ground over Night with *Lob-worms* cut in Pieces.

When you use the *Minnow*, it will be convenient to have your Hook whipped to a Link of small *Brass Wire*, lest you should meet with the *Pike*. A Piece cut from a *Roach* or *Dace* is a tolerable Bait, when you want others.

The following Directions in angling for the *Perch* with a *Worm*, may be worth observing: In *March* use the *Red-worm* at the Bottom: In *April*, the *Oak-worm*, a *young Frog* with his Feet cut off, or a *Red Snail*: In *May*, the *Dock-worm*, or the Bait that breeds on the *Osier-Leaf*, the *Oak-Leaf*, and the *Hawthorn*: In *June*, the *Red-worm* with the Head cut off, and a *Cod-bait* put before it, or the *Dor*: In *July* the large *Grasshopper*, or *Dunghil-Grub*: In *August*, and the following Months, *Red-worms*, or *Brandlings*.

*Perch muddy Moats and standing Waters love,
And in the Chrystal Currents rarely rove;
Or when they do, so nice they are and coy,
The Angler's Skill and Patience they defy.
In gentle Rains, or after violent Show'rs,
He boldly roams, and eagerly devours.
Beneath impending Willows oft he lies,
Watchful to take, or chewing on his Prize:*

Deep

*Deep Pits he loves too ; but you rareliest fail
 Where whirling Eddies rapidly prevail :
 Yet soon in April, after spawning Hours,
 He haunts, and freely bites upon the Scours.
 But large your Float must be, your Tackle
 strong ;*

*Nor should you think his slow Digestion long :
 For, if he bite, his Prize he will not leave,
 Too greedy much the Angler to deceive.
 Nice he is not ; but seldom can you fail,
 With Minnow, Lob-worm, or the blewish
 Tail :*

*Nay, Roach, or Dace in little Pieces cut,
 And on the Hook with careful Safety put,
 Have after various Trial slaughter'd more,
 Than all the long Preparatives before.*

*Nor oft' with Perch alone this Art is blest ;
 For Pike and Chub have strenuously prest
 To seize the savoury Bit before the rest.*

C H A P. VI.

Of the C A R P.

BESIDES the kingly *Salmon* and Ty-
 rant *Pike*, we have the *Carp*, a beautiful,
 good, and very subtle Fish, which has the
 Title of *Queen of the Rivers*. The *Carp* was
 not at first bred, but has now been long in
England, and is become naturalized. One Mr.
Mascal, a Gentleman of *Plumsted* in *Suffex*, is
 said to have first brought them over in the
 Reign

186 *The BRITISH ANGLER. P.II.*
Reign of King *Henry VIII.* To which this an-
cient Distich agrees :

Hops and Turkies, Carps and Beer,
Came into England all in a Year.

As of Sea-fish the *Herring* dies soonest out of the Water, and of fresh Water Fish the *Trout* ; so the *Carp*, next to the *Eel*, endures the most Severity, (except Cold) and lives longest out of his own Element.

Carps and *Loaches* are observed to breed several Months in the Year, contrary to the Custom of other Fish. You shall scarce ever take a Male *Carp* without a Melt, or a Female without a Roe or Spawn, and generally pretty large, especially in the Summer Season. They breed more naturally in Ponds than in running Waters ; but those that live in Rivers are taken to be much the better Meat. There are some Ponds indeed, in which *Carps* will not breed, especially those that are cold ; but where the Situation suits, they multiply innumera- bly. Some affirm, they breed no less than six Times in a Year, if there are no *Pikes* nor *Perch* to devour their Spawn. They cast it upon Grass, or Flags, or Weeds, where it lies ten or twelve Days before it be enlivened.

If the *Carp* have Water-Room and good Feed, he will grow to a very great Bigness and Length : There have been some seen considerably above a Yard long : And in the Lake *Iurian* in *Italy*, it is reported *Carps* have

have thriven to be more than fifty Pounds Weight. For as the *Crocodile* is very long-lived, and all that Life continues to thrive in Bigness, the same has been remarked of *Carps*, especially in some Places. And as their Increase and Growth are very wonderful, so their Decay is often very mysterious. For when sixty or more large *Carps* have been put into several Ponds near a House, where by reason of the Stakes in the Water, and the Owner's constant Vicinity, it was impossible they should be stole away from him; at emptying the Pond, after three or four Years, there has been found never a young *Carp* remaining. This is attributed, and in all Appearance justly, to their being destroyed by the Frogs, as we observed of *Pikes*.

Though the Age of *Carps* is by Sir *Francis Bacon* observed to be but ten Years; *Gesner* says, a *Carp* has been known to live in the *Palatinate* above a hundred Years: And, contrary to the *Pike*, all *Carps* are the better for Age and Bigness. Their Tongues are excellent Meat. The *Carp* is to be reckoned among those leather-mouthed Fish which have their Teeth in their Throat, and for that Reason is very seldom lost by breaking his Hold, if the Hook be once stuck into his Chaps.

At the Time of their Breeding, which is in Summer, when the Sun hath warmed both the Earth and the Water, three or four Male *Carps* will follow a Female, and force her through Weeds and Flags, where she lets fall her
Spawn,

Spawn, which sticks fast to the Weeds, and then they drop their Melt upon it. I have observed, it is thought the *Carp* does this several Months in the Year. When the Spawner has weakened herself by doing that natural Office, two or three Melters have been seen to help her from off the Weeds, by bearing her up on both Sides, and guarding her into the Deep.

Physicians make the Galls and Stones in the Heads of *Carps* to be very medicinal. And in *Italy* great Profit is made of the Spawn of *Carps*, by selling it to the *Jews*, who make it into red *Caviare*, they not being by their Law admitted to eat the *Caviare* made of *Sturgeon*; that being a Fish which wants Scales, and by them reputed to be unclean.

If you fish for a *Carp*, especially a River *Carp*, a great deal of Patience is required. A very good Fisher has been known to angle diligently four or six Hours in a Day, three or four Days together, for a River *Carp*, and not have a Bite. And in some Ponds it is as hard to catch a *Carp* as in a River; particularly where they have Store of Food, and the Water is of a clayish Colour.

The *Carp* bites either at *Worms* or at *Paste*, and of *Worms* the *blewish Marsh* or *Meadow-worm* is esteemed the best; though another *Worm* not too big may possibly do as well, and so may a *green Gentle*. As for *Pastes*, those that are sweet are the best; I mean, those made with Sugar or Honey, and these

these you beat up in a Mortar, or sometimes work them up in your Hands, till you make the whole into one, two, or three Balls, as you like best for your Use. But you must work it so long in the Mortar, as to make it tough enough to hang upon your Hook without washing from it, yet not too hard: It will keep the better on your Hook, if you knead with your *Paste* a little white, or yellowish Wooll. To make this *Paste* keep all the Year for any other Fish, you may mix with it *Virgin's Wax* and *clarified Honey*, and work them with your Hands before the Fire. Some advise, that when you fish for a *Carp* with *Gentles*, you put upon your Hook a small Piece of scarlet Cloth, near a Quarter of an Inch square, having soked it in Oil of *Petre*, called by some Oil of the Rock; and if your *Gentles* be put two or three Days before into a Box or Horn anointed with Honey, and so drawn upon your Hook as to preserve them living, they say you are still more likely to succeed this Way than any other. While you are fishing, continually chew a little white or brown Bread in your Mouth, and cast it into the Pond about the Place where your Float swims. Crumbs of white Bread and Honey made into a *Paste*, is also a good Bait for a *Carp*, and easily made.

Carps, when in Rivers, seek muddy, sandy Bottoms, and deep still Waters. They will not come near a Boat on a large Pond or River, although Rushes or Weeds interpose. They

They are so over-wary, fearful, and subtle, that they are often stiled the *fresh Water Fox*, as by others the *Queen of Rivers*.

Suffex, whither they were first brought, is said to be the best furnished with *Carps* of any County in *England*. And even in the Sea about the *Isle of Man*, there are caught very excellent *Tench* and *Carps*. The Male *Carp* is better than the Female, the white better than the yellow, and their prime Season in *March*. They begin to spawn at three Years old, and *Dubravius* says, continue to do so till thirty.

The *Carp*, though much admired, is a very bony Fish, and is therefore thought to owe more of his Reputation to the elegant Manner of dressing him, than to his own intrinsick Worth.

When you angle for him, put a *Swan-quill-Float* upon your Line, which, when drawn two or three Inches under Water, will direct you to strike. But till you see this, be cautious how you check him; for he will nibble some Time before he takes the Bait in his Mouth. Having hooked him, before you keep him from his *Harbour*, to which he will endeavour to retire, as soon as he receives the Prick, and which if you do not prevent, both Hook and Line are in the greatest Danger.

Some bait their *Carp-Holes* with Worms, in this Manner, and it is a very good Way in Rivers. They get a *Tin-pot* punched full of Holes, in which they put a Quantity of *Worms*, and then sink it with a Weight. The *Worms* will

will creep out gradually, and become a delicious Prey to the *Carp*. This is better than to cast in *Worms* by Handfuls, which are usually carried away with the Stream : But in Ponds you may use the latter Method, or you may throw in Quantities of boiled *Malt*, which they also like.

Though *Carps* love Mud, yet they delight not in weedy, but clear Water, except the *Weeds* are little in Quantity. In very muddy Water, you may drop your Bait gently near the Brink, using a *Float*, but no Lead on your Line, and the *Carp* will imagine your Bait to be a *Worm* coming out of the Bank.

In a fine Sun-shiny Day, *Carp* will often prime about Noon, and swim about the Edges of a Pond, to catch such *Flies* as fall upon the Surface of the Water. Let the Angler then take a Rod strong and pliable at the Top, a strong *Silk Line*, and a Hook large enough for a *Lob-worm*. Then finding or making a Place free from Weeds, about the Compass of the Crown of a Hat, let him drop in his Bait without a *Float*, and with only one large Shot upon his Line, which he must lodge upon the Leaf of some Weed adjoining, so that the Bait is not above eight Inches in the Water : Then retiring, but so as to keep his Eye upon the Shot, let him wait till he sees it taken away, with about a Foot of Line, and then he may venture to strike. When he has hooked his Fish, let him keep him tight, and not suffer him to entangle himself among the Weeds ; and either

either draw him out by main Force, or pull him to the Bank in a clear Place, and having tired him, land him with a *Net*. By this Method, great Numbers of *Carp* have been taken in a Pond that was well stocked.

In general, *Carp*s bite very early and late in *April*, *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*, and sometimes all Night in the still Part of the Water. Have a long Rod, and keep out of Sight, when you angle for them. When you strike him, give him Play ; for he is a strong Fish, and will vigorously struggle. He may be caught at Mid-Water, sometimes lower, and sometimes higher, as the Weather is ; but use always a Float of Quill. When a large *Carp* takes the Bait, he runs to the farther Side of the River or Pond.

There being great Similitude between the *Carp* and the *Tench*, particularly in their Feed, I refer to the End of next Chapter for what may be said of them jointly in *Verse*. But I must not here omit one Thing, in which the *Carp* and the *Tench* widely differ, and that is in their bearing the severe cold Weather. Hear what the Poet says of them, and several other Fish, in the following Verses.

*The Eel to Cold an early Prey resign'd,
First falls, a helpless undefended Kind :
Unless her wintry Hold betimes she chuse,
The Banky Shelter, or low-bedded Doze.
The Carp and Perch in mingling Numbers die,
And Pike expire with the unravag'd Fry :*

They

They feel their Scales with stiff'ning Cold confin'd,

And languish faint within their Icy Rhind :

Yet does the hardy Tench securely dwell,

Envelop'd fast in her cold frozen Shell.

C H A P. VII.

Of the TENCH.

THE *Tench* is esteemed the *Physician* of the Finny Race. He delights in standing Waters, and therefore loves Ponds better than Rivers, and prefers Pits to them both. There is a River, however, in *Dorsetshire*, that abounds with *Tench*; but they are supposed to retire to the most deep and quiet Places about it.

This Fish hath very large Fins, very small and smooth Scales, a red Circle about his Eyes, which are big and of a Gold Colour; and from either Angle of his Mouth there hangs a little Barb. In every *Tench's* Head there are two little Stones, which foreign Physicians, says Mr. *Walton*, make great use of: But he is not commended for wholesome Meat, tho' there be very much Use made of him for outward Applications.

It is of the *Pike* especially, that the *Tench* is said to be the *Physician*; and that the *Pike*, being either sick or hurt, is cured by touching him. But this Fish, that carries a natural Balsam in him to cure both himself and others, yet loves to feed in very foul Water, and a-

mongst Weeds. He will bite at a PASTE made of *Brown-bread* and *Honey*, or at a *Marsh-worm*, *Lob-worm*, *Wasps*, *Gentles*, or *Cod-bait*. He is very fond of *Tar*, and therefore if you mix a little with your PASTE, or dip your Worm in it, many affirm it will increase your Sport, and the Experiment doubtless is worth trying.

His Haunts and Times of Biting are generally the same with the *Carp*; yet in *April*, on a cloudy, misting, rainy Morning, the Wind South or West, and warm, they have been known to bite very well till eleven o'Clock. In some Pits they breed only, and never thrive to any Bigness, and in others they thrive and never breed. Notwithstanding the ill Character some have given of him, the *Tench* is a good and pleasant Fish, if eat in his Season, and well drest; but one River *Tench* is worth ten Pond.

Besides the River *Stower* in *Dorsetshire*, so particularly commended for Plenty of *Tench* and *Eels*; there is *Brecknock-Mere*, in *Brecknockshire*, being two Miles in length, and as much in breadth, full of *Perches*, *Tenches*, and *Eels*.

Tenches spawn in *June*, or about the Beginning of *July*: They live long out of Water, and their best Season is from the Beginning of *September* till the End of *May*.

Your Tackle for the *Tench* must be strong, and you must attend your Sport early in the
Morn-

Morning, and two or three Hours before Night.

The Waters ought to be so still, and the Surface so smooth and even, that it cannot give the least Motion to your Float. Be not too eager in striking him when he bites; for as he delights in sucking the Bait, allow him Time, and he will not quit it. The best and most enticing Bait, and indeed some say you need not use any other, whether for Pond or River, is the *Red-worm* dipp'd in *Tar*: Or, take the clotted black Blood out of the Heart of a *Sheep*, some fine *Flour* and *Honey*, temper them well together, and make them of the Consistence of an Unguent, and anoint the *Red-worm* with it. Some prefer this, and others the *Tar*. No other Bait is to be compared to either of them. *June*, *July*, and *August* are the only Months in which you may expect to have any Sport with *Tench*; and then the greatest Plenty is taken in the *River Stower*, before mentioned.

Most of the following general Remarks are equally useful both for the *Carp* and the *Tench*:

To *Carp* and *Tench* great Art you must apply,
 Which love still Pits, and chrystal Currents fly.
 They all your Patience, all your Strength require,
 And, tho' admir'd, rarely your Baits admire.
 Sometimes in Rivers to your Lot they fall;
 But there's no Vigour where the Hopes are small.

*To speed in Ponds, you with the Sun must rise,
And then the largest easiest are your Prize.
They strongly struggle, and unless prepar'd,
Your Victory's doubtful, and your Labour hard.
Ponds weedy feed the Tench, and those more
clear*

*Best please the Carp ; yet both for Mud declare :
And in their Baits so closely they agree,
They feed just as they live, promiscuously.
Both love their Baits prepar'd with nicest Care,
And both best take them scented strong with
Tar.*

*Low at the Bottom, in the Deeps they lie,
And rarely, very rarely feed on high.*

*Tho' oft' the Carp in hottest Summer-Days,
While on the Surface wantonly he plays,
On Bread and Worms with eager Passion }
preys.*

*But if your Rod or Self offend his Sight,
He's gone, and blasts at once your whole Delight.
He's humcursome at best, Experience tells,
For Season, Baits, and Place, and all Things
else :*

*But in the Midst he seldom fails to move,
And Marsh and Flag-worm takes with eager
Love.*

*For Tench no Breeze should stir the well-tarr'd
Bait,*

*On which both late and early thou must wait.
Gentles and Codbaits Sport will often yield ;
But still for Carp the former claims the Field.*

C H A P. VIII.

Of the B A R B E L.

TH E *Barbel* is so called from the *Latin* Word *Barba*, a Beard, in allusion to the Barb, or Wattels at his Mouth, under his Chaps. He is one of those leather-mouthed Fishes that seldom breaks his Hold if he be once hooked: But then he is so strong, that he will often break both Rod or Line, if he proves to be a large one. But tho' the *Barbel* is of a fine Shape, he is not esteemed the best Fish to eat, either for Wholsomeness or Taste. The Male, however, is reputed much better than the Female, whose Spawn is very hurtful.

Barbels flock together like Sheep, and are at the worst in *April*, about which Time they spawn, but quickly grow again in Season. They are able to live in the strongest Swifts of the Water, and in Summer love the shallowest and sharpest Streams. They delight to lurk under Weeds, and to feed on Gravel against a rising Ground: They will root and dig in the Sands with their Nose, like a Swine, and there nest themselves: Yet sometimes they retire to deep and swift Bridges, Floodgates, or Weirs, where they will nest themselves amongst Piles, or in hollow Places, and take such Hold of Moss or Weeds, that be the Water never so swift, it is not able to force them

them from the Place they contend for. This is the *Barbel's* constant Custom in Summer, when he and most living Creatures sport themselves in the Sun : But at the Approach of Winter, he forsakes the swift Streams and shallow Waters, and by degrees retires to those Parts of the River that are more quiet and deep ; in which Places he spawns, and, with the Help of the *Melter*, hides his Spawn or Eggs in Holes, which they both dig in the Gravel, and then mutually labour to cover it with the same Sand, to prevent it from being devour'd by other Fish. The Spawn of a *Barbel*, tho' not absolutely Poison, as some imagine, is however dangerous Meat, and especially in the Month of *May*; yet it is sometimes taken by the Country People for a violent Purge or Vomit.

This Fish is of a fine Cast, with small Scales, which are placed after a most exact and curious Manner. Tho' he be not delicately good, yet his Flesh is tender, easy of Concoction, and very nutritious. His greatest Fault is, that he is very bony. Both the *Chub* and he have lost part of their Credit by ill Cookery, they being reputed the coarsest of fresh Water Fish : But the *Barbel* affords an Angler fine Sport, being a strong and a cunning Fish ; so strong and cunning, as to often endanger the breaking of the Tackle, by running his Head forcibly towards any Covert, Hole, or Bank, and then striking at the Line, to break it off with his Tail. He is also so artful as to nibble
and

and suck off your *Worm* close to the Hook, and yet avoid the letting the Hook come into his Mouth.

The *Barbel* is also delicate in his Baits, and must have them clean and sweet. Your *Worms* should be well-scoured, and not kept in sour and musty Moss. But at a well-scoured *Lob-worm* he will bite boldly, and especially if the Night or two before you fish for him, you bait the Places where you intend to stand, with big *Worms* cut into Pieces. And this is particularly to be noted, that you cannot over-bait the Place, nor fish too early nor too late for a *Barbel*. He will also bite at *Bees* and at *Gentles*, they not being too much scoured, but green, and at *Cheese*, which is not to be too hard, but kept a Day or two in a wet Linnen Cloth to make it tough. With this you may also bait the Water a Day or two before you fish for him, and if the *Cheese* were laid in clarified Honey an Hour or two before, you would be still the likelier to have Sport. Some have directed to cut the *Cheese* into thin Pieces, and toast it, and then tie it on the Hook with fine Silk. Others advise to fish for the *Barbel* with *Sheeps Tallow* and soft *Cheese* beaten or worked into a *Paste*, and recommend it as exceeding good in *August*. But the *Lob-worm* well-scoured, the *Gentle* not too much scoured, and *Cheese* ordered as here directed, are usually Baits enough in any Month of the Year.

When you fish for a *Barbel*, your Rod and Line must be long and tough. He bites early in the Morning, from Sun-rise till ten of the Clock, and in the Evening, from four o'Clock till Sun-set, and sometimes later. Their principal biting Months are from about the 10th of *May* until the End of *August*. A large *Barbel* will sometimes weigh twelve or fourteen Pounds; and therefore your Rod and Line ought not only to be very strong, but fastened with Rings, and a *Winch* or *Wheel*.

As to their Spawn, before-mentioned, it is surfeiting and dangerous, and whoever eats thereof will break out in Blotches and red Spots, will loath his Meat, lose his Appetite, and be extremely disordered: His Liver is likewise unwholsome.

The two famous Places to angle for *Barbel*, about *London*, are at *Kingston-Bridge*, and *Shepperton-Pool*; at the latter of which Places there is good Accommodation for Anglers, a great Quantity of *Barbel*, and good Company all the Summer; you may there likewise be supplied with Plenty of Bait at all Times.

A *Barbel-Hole* should be constantly baited with *Lob-worms*; and no *Barbel* ought, by the Rules of *Angling*, to be killed, which does not measure eighteen Inches fairly. A *Barbel* taken in *Byfleet* or *Weybridge* Rivers, of twenty Inches in Length, will weigh down another of the same Length taken in the *Thames*, by a Pound, or upwards, and is much firmer, fatter, and better relished.

The

*The Barbel priz'd for Sport, tho' not for Food,
(Few Fish there are less exquisitely good)*

*Close at a Current's End is sure to lie,
Low in the Stream, as the swift Trout runs
high.*

*True River Hog, upon the Sand he roots;
At Lobworms, Bees, and ev'n at Garbadge shoots:*

*But always best, if early at the Sport,
His Morning Appetite you wisely court.*

*When gentle Winds a little curl the Waves,
Much Caution and much Patience too he saves.*

*But see your Lines and Hooks securely bold;
You know him strong, and you will find him
bold.*

*If Chance, propitious, at some Current's End,
Shew you clear Sands that gradually descend,
Where some close Weeds his lab'ring Fins supply,
Or hanging Osiers shade the sportive Fry;*

*Angler, take Courage; ev'ry Inch beware;
For, if in all the Stream, the Herd is there,
Disturb them not with Shadow or with
Sound;*

*And if your Bait trail gently on the Ground,
Except in Spawning-Time, no Obstacle is found.*

CHAP. IX.

Of the BREAM.

THE *Bream*, at full Growth, is a large and handsome Fish: He breeds both in Rivers and Ponds; but loves best to live in Ponds, where, if he likes the Water and

Air, he will grow not only to be of a great Size, but extremely fat. He is very broad, has a forked Tail, and his Scales are set in beautiful Order. He hath large Eyes, and a narrow sucking Mouth, with two Sets of Teeth, and a Lozenge-like Bone, to help his Grinding. The Melter is observed to have two large Melts, and the Female two large Bags of Spawn.

The *French* esteem this Fish highly, and have this Proverb concerning him, That *he who bath Breams in his Pond, is able to bid his friend welcome.* The best Part of a *Bream* is his Belly and Head.

Some say, that *Breams* and *Roaches* will mix their Eggs and Melt together, whence there is in many Places a Bastard Breed of *Breams*, that never come to be either large or good, but very numerous. The *Bream* however is very scarce in the Rivers within twenty Miles of *London*.

Paste made of brown Bread and Honey, *Gentles*, or the young Brood of *Wasps*, (which are not unlike *Gentles*,) and should be hardened in an Oven, or dried on a Tile before the Fire, to make them tough, are good Baits for the *Bream*. There is also at the Root of Docks, or Rushes in watery Places, a *Worm* not unlike a *Maggot*, at which both *Bream* and *Tench* will bite freely. Or the *Bream* will bite at a *Grasshopper* with the Legs cropt off, in *June* and *July*; or at several *Flies* under Water, which may be found on Flags that
grow

grow near the Water-side. Many other Baits are very good, but the following most excellent one, either for a *Carp* or a *Bream*, in any River or Mere, Mr. *Walton* says, may supply the Place of them all.

Chuse out the biggest *Red-worm* you can find, without a Knot; get a Pint or a Quart of them in an Evening, in Garden-Walks, or chalky Commons after a Shower of Rain; and put them with clean Moss well washed and picked, and the Water squeezed out as clean as you can, into an Earthen Pot or Pipkin set dry: Change the Moss every three or four Days for three Weeks or a Month together, and then your Bait will be at the best, exceeding clear and lively.

Having thus prepared your Baits, take three long Angling-Rods, and as many and more Silk or Hair Lines, with a like Number of large Swan or Goose-quill strong Floats. Then take Pieces of Lead made like a Plummet, and fasten them to the lower End of your Lines. Fasten your Link-Hook also to the Lead, and let there be about a Foot or ten Inches between the Lead and the Hook. But be sure the Lead be heavy enough to sink the Float or Quill a little under Water, and not the Quill to bear up the Lead, because the latter must lie on the Ground. Your Link next the Hook should be smaller than the rest of your Line, if you dare venture it; for fear of taking the *Pike* or *Perch*, who will be sure to visit your Hooks, before either *Carp* or *Bream* will

will come near to bite. On this Account, the *Indian* Grass makes the most convenient Hook-Links. When the Worm is well-baited, it will crawl up and down, as far as the Lead will give Leave, which much entices the Fish to bite without Suspicion.

With your Baits thus prepared, and your Tackling fitted, repair to the River, where you have seen them swim in Skulls or Shoals in the Summer-Time, in a hot Afternoon, about three or four o'Clock: Watch their going forth of their deep Holes, and returning again about four o'Clock, when most of them seek Provision at the Bottom, while one or two will lie on the Top of the Water, rolling and tumbling, to keep Centinel. Observe where he plays most, and stays longest, which commonly is in the broadest and deepest Place of the River; and there, or near thereabouts, at a clear Bottom, and a convenient Landing-Place, take one of your Angles fitted as aforesaid, and sound the Bottom, which should be about eight or ten Feet deep, and two Yards from the Bank. Then reflect with yourself, whether that Water will rise or fall by the next Morning, by reason of any Water-mills near, and according to your Discretion take the Depth of the Place, where you mean after to cast your Ground-bait, and to fish with the utmost Exactness; so that the Lead lying on or near the Ground-bait, the Top of the Float may only appear upright half an Inch above the Water. When you have

have thus found the Place and its Depth, go home and prepare your Ground-bait in the following Manner. Take a Peck, or a Peck and half, according to the Magnitude of the Stream and Depth of the Water where you mean to angle, of sweet coarse-ground Barley-Malt, and just boil it up in a Kettle: Then strain it through a Bag into a Tub, and when the Bag and Malt is near cold, take it down to the Water-side about eight or nine o'Clock in the Evening, but not before: Cast in two Parts of your Ground-bait, squeezed hard between both your Hands: It will sink presently to the Bottom, and before it may lie in the very Place where you mean to angle. If the Stream runs hard, or moves a little, cast your Malt in Handfuls a little the higher up the Stream. You may squeeze the Malt so fast together in Handfuls, that the Water will hardly part it with the Fall.

Leave your Bag, with the rest of your Tackling and Ground-bait, near the Sporting-Place all Night, and in the Morning about three or four o'Clock, re-visit the Water-side; but not too near; for they have always a Centinel, and the whole Shoal are very watchful. Then gently take one of your Rods, and bait your Hook, casting it over your Ground-bait, and gently draw it to you till the Lead rests about the Middle of the Ground-bait.

Take a second Rod, and cast it in about a Yard above, and your third about a Yard below the first Rod: Fix the Rods in the Ground,

Ground, and go yourself so far from the Water-side, that you perceive nothing but the Top of the Floats, which you must diligently observe. When you have a Bite, you'll perceive the Top of your Float to sink suddenly into the Water: But be not too hafty to run to your Rods, till you see that the Line got clear away: Then creep to the Water-side, and give as much Line as you possibly can. If it be a good *Carp* or *Bream*, they will go to the farther Side of the River: Then strike gently, and hold your Rod a little while at a Bent; but if you pull both together, you are sure to lose your Game, for either the Line or Hook, or the Fishes Hold will break. After you have overcome them, they will make noble Sport, and are very shy to be landed. But the *Carp* is far stronger, and more mettlesome than the *Bream*.

As the *Bream's* delightful Harbour is the *Water-dock*, under which he lies, so you must take care to keep him from thence, when you have hooked him: He will strive to get thither, that he may entangle your Line about the Stalk of the *Water-dock*, which being naturally very tough, it will be impossible to disengage yourself from thence. His being a flat Fish, causes him to draw much Water; which, though it does not increase his natural Strength, nevertheless it will add to the Difficulty you will find in taking him.

I have already observed, that if the *Pike* and *Perch* breeds in that River, they will be sure to bite first; and when they do, they must

must be first taken. For the most Part you will find them very large. They repair to the Ground-bait, not that they will eat of it, but to feed and sport amongst the young Fry, that gather about and hover over the Bait.

The Way to discover the *Pike* and to take him, if you mistrust your *Bream-Hook*, may be thus: Take a small *Bleak*, a *Roach*, or *Gudgeon*, and plant it alive among your Rods two Foot deep from the Cork, with a little *Red-worm* on the Point of the Hook: Then take a few Crumbs of White-bread, or some of the Ground-bait, and sprinkle it gently amongst your Rods. If the *Pike* be there, the little Fish will skip out of the Water at his Appearance; but the live-set Bait is sure to be taken.

You may continue your Sport from four in the Morning till eight; and if it be a gloomy, windy Day, they will bite all Day long. But this is too long to stand to your Rods at one Place, and it will spoil your Evening Sport that Day, which is this.

About four o' Clock in the Afternoon repair to your baited Place, and as soon as you come to the Water-side, cast in one half of the rest of your Ground-bait, and stand off: Then, whilst the Fish are gathering together, you may repose yourself so long as the smoking a Pipe of Tobacco. Then put in your three Rods as in the Morning, and you will find excellent Sport till eight o' Clock: When you go away, cast in the Residue of your Ground-bait, and next Morning by four o' Clock visit them a-
gain

gain for four Hours, which is the best Sport of all. After that the best Way is to let them rest ; for if you fish for them three or four Days together, your Game will be very shy and wary. Your only Way therefore, is to desist from your Sport about two or three Days ; and in the mean Time, take a Turf of green, but short Grass, as big or bigger than a round Trencher : To the Top of it, on the green Side, with a Needle and green Thread, fasten one by one as many little Red-worms as will near cover all the Turf : Then take a round Board or Trencher, with a Hole in the Middle, and through the Turf placed on the Board or Trencher, with a Cord as long as is needful, tied to the Pole, let it down to the Bottom of the Water for the Fish to feed upon, and thus leave them without Disturbance. When after two or three Days you have drawn it away, you may fall to, and enjoy your former Recreation.

As I shall mention the *Sea-Bream* hereafter, I will only add to what has been said of the Nature of *River-Bream*, that he is by some esteemed dangerous to eat, by reason of his Bones : That tho' the Bream is a kind of flat Carp, yet he is whiter, and of better Nourishment : That he is so great a Breeder as often to over-stock your Pond, and thereby consume all the sweet Feed, and starve the other Fish : That he spawns in *June*, or the Beginning of *July* : And that tho' you may angle for them from the Beginning of *April* till *Michaelmas*,
yet

yet the best Time is from the Beginning of the last Week in *July* till the last Week in *August*. To sum up these Directions ;

Choose some still Pond, or slow discolour'd Stream,

And at Mid-water angle for the Bream.

Nice to Extremes, his Minutes you must wait,
Be early with the Sun, and with the Moon-
shine late,

Unless a Mack'rel Gale should recommend your
Bait.

Small be your Hook, your Rod six Yards or
more :

And in the Stream, far distant from the Shore,

You'll find him roving, and with Ease divine

'Tis he that flats your Float and tugs your Line.

He gorges then : Ah ! Angler, ah ! beware ;

If large your Bait, you must no Patience spare :

If small, a little serves ; his Mouth allows

Of nothing large ; the less the better does.

Hence tho' some few the larger Dew-worm use ;

Yet most the Flag, or well-scour'd Red-worm

choose :

For these both Flies and Pastes the Angler should

refuse.

C H A P. X.

Of the Chub or Chevin.

TH*E* *Chub*, tho' usually difesteemed, and justly as he is commonly dressed, may with Care be made not an unpleasant Dish. It is objected against him, not only that he is full of small forked Bones, but that he eats waterish, and that the Flesh of him is not firm, but short and tasteless. In order therefore to encourage the young Angler, and to let him see that his Time is not wholly lost in taking this disregarded Fish, some have thought proper, in the first Place, to let him know how to make the *Chub* recompence the Trouble he causes, which indeed is seldom a great deal. But as this Method is somewhat preposterous, I chuse rather to refer the Cooking of the *Chub* to that Part which treats expressly of dressing Fish, and content myself with observing here, that there is as much Difference between a *Chub* newly taken and dress'd, and one of a Day's keeping after he is dead, as between Cherries newly gathered from a Tree, and others that have been bruised, and lain a Day or two in Water.

There is no Fish better than the *Chub* to enter a young Angler, he is so easily caught; but then it must be in this particular Way. Go to one of their Holes, where in most hot Days you may find a Number of them floating near the
Top

Top of the Water. Get two or three *Grafshoppers* as you go over the Meadows, and place yourself secretly behind a Tree, remaining as free from Motion as possible. Put a *Grafshopper* upon your Hook, and let your Hook hang a quarter of a Yard short of the Water: To which End you must rest your Rod on some Bough of a Tree. It is likely the *Chubs* will sink down towards the Bottom of the Water at the first Shadow of your Rod, they being the most fearful of Fishes, and apt to do thus if but a Bird flies over them, and makes the least Shadow on the Water: But they will presently rise up to the Top again, and there lie soaring till some Shadow frights him afresh: When they lie thus upon the Top of the Water, fix your Eye upon the best *Chub* you can single out, and move your Rod gently towards him. Let your Bait fall easily upon the Water three or four Inches before him, and he will infallibly take it, and you will be as certain to catch him: For he is one of those *Leather-mouth'd* Fishes, of which a Hook scarce ever loses its hold: But be sure to give him Play enough, before you offer to take him out of the Water.

When a *Grafshopper* cannot be found, a *Black-Snail*, with his Belly slit, to shew his White, or a Piece of soft *Cheese*, will usually do as well: Nay, sometimes a *Worm*, or any kind of *Fly*, as the *Ant-fly*, the *Flesh-fly*, or *Wall-fly*, the *Dor* or *Beetle*, which may be found under Cow-dung, or a *Bob*, the Original of a *Beetle*, or a *Cod-worm*, or *Cafe-worm*,
will

will any of them do very well for the Purpose. After the same Manner you may catch a *Trout* in a hot Evening. When as you walk by a Brook, you see or hear him leap at Flies, if you then get a *Grasshopper*, and put it on a Hook, with your Line about two Yards long, standing behind a Bush or Tree where his Hole is, and make your Bait stir up and down on the Top of the Water, you may, if you stand close, be sure of a Bite, but not sure to catch him, because he is not, as the *Chub*, a Leather-mouth'd Fish. After this Manner you may fish for him with almost any kind of live *Fly*, but with nothing so successful as a *Grasshopper*.

As we have frequent Occasion to use this Term *Leather-mouth'd*, it may here be proper, before we proceed, to explain what Anglers mean by that Word. *Leather-mouth'd* Fish are such as have their Teeth in their Throat, among which are the *Chub*, the *Barbel*, the *Gudgeon*, the *Carp*, and divers others. The Hook being stuck into the Leather, or Skin of the Mouth of such Fish, seldom or never loses its Hold: But on the contrary, a *Pike*, a *Perch*, or a *Trout*, and some other Fish, which have not their Teeth in their Throats, but in their Mouths, the Hook never takes such sure Hold of them, but you often lose your Prey, unless he has intirely gorged it.

In *March* and *April* the *Chub* is usually taken with *Worms*; in *May*, *June*, and *July*, he will bite at any *Fly*, or at *Cherries*, or at *Beetles* with their Legs and Wings cut off,
or

or at any Kind of *Snail*, or at the *black Bee* that breeds in Clay Walls ; and he never refuses a *Grasshopper* on the Top of a swift Stream, nor at the Bottom the young *Humble-bee* that breeds in long Grass, and is generally found by the Mowers. In *August*, and in the cooler Months, a *yellow Paste* made of the strongest Cheese, and pounded in a Mortar with a little Butter, and so much Saffron as being beaten small will turn it to a Lemon Colour, is a very good Bait. In the Winter Months the *Chub* is accounted best, it being observed that the forked Bones are then lost, or turned into a Kind of Gristle, especially if he be baked. Some make a *Paste* for this Season, of Cheese and Turpentine. He will bite also at a *Minnow* or *Penk*, as well as the *Trout*. But take this for a Rule in *Chub-fishing*, that in hot Weather he is to be angled for towards the Mid-water, or near the Top ; and in colder Weather nearer the Bottom. And if you fish for him on the Top, with a *Beetle* or *Fly*, be sure to let your Line be very long, and to keep out of Sight. The Spawn of this Fish is excellent Meat ; and the Head of a large *Chevin*, the Throat being well washed, is the best Part of him.

The *Chub* spawns in *March*, and is in Season from *Mid-May* till after *Candlemass*, but best in Winter. He likes sandy and clay Bottoms, and Streams shaded with Trees. Sometimes, in cold Weather, he is taken at the Bottom with a *Ledger-bait*. When Cattle, in
Summer

Summer, come into the Fords, their Dung allures him thither.

The *Chub* bites in Summer from Sun-rise till Nine o'Clock in the Forenoon, and from Three o'Clock in the Afternoon till Sun-set. After struck, he quickly yields, if a large one; but the lesser struggle briskly and longer. In Winter Months they bite in the Middle of the Day, and in Sun-shine. During the Summer Season, if about Seven o'Clock in the Evening you go into a Pond or Boat, and floating down the River, over which Willows or other Trees do hang, angle with a *Bee*, *Moth*, or the like, as you do with the *artificial Fly* for *Trout*, they will rise as fast as you can throw out your Line for them.

To the Baits before-mentioned, which are esteemed the best, I will add a few others, tho' the *Chub* will take almost any Sort of Bait. Young *Eels* about the Thickness of a Straw; the *Dew-worm* and *Red-worm* well scoured; the *Earth-bob*; the *Brains* of an *Ox* or *Cow*; the *Pith* or *Marrow* of an *Ox* or *Cow's Backbone*; fat *Bacon*: These are good Baits for the cooler Months. In the Summer Months, he takes all Sorts of Baits bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees; also *Gentles*, young *Wasps*, *Hornets*, and *Dores*. *Snails* he takes early in the Morning, but seldom in the Heat of the Day. He loves a large Bait, as a *Wasp* and a *Colewort-worm*, and will bite at divers Sorts of Flies on the Hook at once.

Some

Some few other Instructions are contained in the following Lines.

*The Chub or Chevin constantly is found
In quick deep Streams that run o'er marly
Ground.*

*For tho' in muddy Rivers much he preys,
Yet there he nicely seeks the Sands or Clays ;
Or else the Bridge his Safeguard is, and Haunts
Where Strength in Tackle best his own sup-
plants :*

*Of these, when struck, he's easily bereav'd,
And after some few Flounces well deceiv'd.
Here Hooks and Rods should have sufficient
Strength,*

*And the strong Line be half the Angle's Length.
Floats may be spar'd, as when you use the Fly,
And gentle Dabs should summon him on high.
All Noise, all Shadow shun with utmost
Care :*

*The fearful Fish each Accident will scare ;
Else all Day long he bites, and ev'ry where. }
Oft' basking under shady Trees he lies ;
Then at the Grasshopper he'll freely rise,
The Dor, the Caterpillar, Wasp, or Bee,
The Moth, the Ant, or any Fly you see.
But various Anglers various Baits will use,
For some the Snail, and some the Minnow
chuse :*

*And if the River's deep, and current strong,
Without Success you cannot tempt him long.*

C H A P. XI.

Of the E E L, &c.

TH E *Eel* was in the highest Esteem among the *Romans*, who thought her the Paragon of their Feasts; and is universally allowed, at this Day, to be a most delicious Fish. There has been much Dispute about their Breeding, many having denied them Generation, and ascribed their Origin to the Action of the Sun upon the Mud, to the Putrefaction of the Earth, and divers other Causes. Those that deny them to breed by Generation, demand, If any Man ever saw an *Eel* to have a Spawn or Melt? They are thus answered, That we may be as certain of their Breeding, as if we had seen their Spawn: For *Eels* have all Parts fit for Generation, like other Fish, but so small as not to be easily discerned with the naked Eye, by reason of their Fatness; but that they may however be discovered, and that the He and She *Eel* may be distinguished by their Fins. Some affirm that they have seen *Eels* cling together like *Dew-worms*.

There has been an Opinion, that *Eels* growing old, breed other *Eels* out of the Corruption of their own Age, which exceeds not ten Years. And another, that as Pearls are made of glutinous Dew-drops, which are condensed by the Sun's Heat in hot Countries; so *Eels* are bred of a particular Dew falling in the Months
of

of *May* or *June* on the Banks of Ponds or Rivers, which, in a few Days, are by the Sun's Heat turned into *Eels*. In the Beginning of *July*, some Parts of a River, not far from *Canterbury*, may be seen covered over with young *Eels*, about the Thickness of a Straw, all lying on the Top of the Water. The like is reported of other Rivers, as particularly of the *Severn*, and of a Pond or Mere near *Staffordshire*, where, about a set Time in Summer, such small *Eels* abound so much, that many of the poorer Sort of People, that inhabit near it, take them out with Sieves or Sheets, and make a Kind of Eel-cake of them, and eat it as Bread. But doubtless these are all bred by Generation, as well as other Animals of every Kind.

We are told that those *Eels* which are bred in Rivers that communicate with the Sea, never return to the fresh Waters when they have once tasted the salt; which is the more probable, because powdered Beef is a most excellent Bait to catch an *Eel*.

It is granted that *Eels*, during the six cold Months of the Year, move not up and down, either in Rivers or Pools, but get into the soft Earth or Mud, and there many of them together bed themselves, and live without feeding upon any Thing. In extreme cold Weather, they have been known to get out of the Water into a Stack of Hay in a Meadow upon dry Ground, and there bed themselves, till the Frost killed them. And as the *Eel* is impatient of Cold, so it hath been observed, that in

warm Weather one has been known to live five Days out of the Water.

There are several Sorts of *Eels*; as the *silver Eel*; the *green* or *greenish Eel*, which in the River of *Thames* are called *Grigs*; a *blackish Eel*, whose Head is flatter and bigger than the common *Eels*; and an *Eel* whose Fins are reddish, which is but seldom taken in this Nation. Most allow, that the *silver Eel* is viviparous, that is, brings forth her Young alive, not by Spawning like other Fish, but that her Brood come perfect from her, no bigger nor longer than Pins.

The *Eel* may be caught with divers Kinds of Baits: *Powdered Beef*, a *Lob* or *Garden-worm*, a *Frog*, a *Minnow*, or other small Fish, the Gut of a *Hen*, *Chicken*, or any Fish, or almost any Offals will tempt him; for he is a greedy Fish. But a very little *Lamprey*, which some call a *Pride*, and which may in the hot Months be found in the River *Thames*, and in many Mud-heaps in other Rivers, almost as commonly as one finds Worms in a Dunghill, exceeds every other Bait.

The *Eel* seldom stirs in the Day, and therefore he is usually caught at Night with one of these Baits, by laying Hooks, which you are to fasten to the Bank or Twigs of a Tree; or by throwing a String cross the Stream with many Hooks at it, baited with the aforesaid Baits, and a Clod, Plummet, or Stone, thrown into the River with it, that so you may in
the

the Morning find it near some fixed Place, and take it up with a Drag-hook, or otherwise.

Eels are always in Season, and very good ; but their best Time is in Winter, and their worst in *May*. They have a very sweet Flesh, fat, white, pleasant, and nourishing. They are best roasted and broiled ; or first par-boiled in Salt and Water, and then roasted or broiled, which makes them very tender.

The Rivers *Stower* in *Dorsetshire*, *Ankam* in *Lincolnshire*, and *Irk* in *Lancashire*, are fam'd by their respective Neighbours for very excellent *Eels*. And our ingenious Mr. *Pope* has celebrated the River *Kennet* in *Berkshire* on the same account, in his *Windfor Forest*.

The Kennet swift, for silver Eels renown'd.

In *Rumsey-Mere* in *Huntingtonshire*, there are Store of *Eels* and large *Pikes*, which they there call *Hagets*. But *Cambridgeshire* fancies she has the most and best *Eels*, if you credit the Natives. The *Severn* in *Worcestershire* breeds and feeds such a Number of fresh Water *Lampreys*, as if Nature had there stored a Pond with them. These Fish are like *Eels*, slippery and blackish, but beneath on their Bellies somewhat blue. At either Side of their Throat they receive and let in fresh Water at seven Holes, because they want Gills. They are best in the Spring-time, being then very sweet : For in the Summer the inner Nerve

or String, which serves them instead of a Back-bone, grows hard; and this String or Nerve is always to be taken away when you dress them. Whensoever you either roast, fry, or broil *Eels*, *Congers*, or *Lampreys*, be sure they be done brown, tender, and crisp; and first well par-boiled in Water, with Salt and Fennel, or sweet Herbs, which corrects and renders their Flesh more pleasant, tender and palatable. A delicate Cake, called *Elver-Cake*, is made of the young Fry of *Severn Lampreys*, and sent to all Parts as a great Dainty.

In the Day-time *Eels* hide themselves under some Covert, Roots of Trees, Stocks, Stones, Brush-wood, Piles, Boards, or Planks about Flood-gates, Weirs, Bridges, or Mills, or in Holes in the River's Bank; and they delight in still Waters, and in Waters that are foul or muddy; tho' the smaller *Eels* are found in all Sorts of Rivers and Soils.

Besides the above-mentioned Way of taking them in the Night, *Eels* are caught in the Day-time by a *Ledger-bait*, by *Snigling* or *Brogling*, and by *Bobbing*.

Brogling or *Snigling* is thus performed: Get an exceeding strong and long Line, and a small compassed Hook, baited with a well-scoured *Red-worm*, or *Dew-worm*: Hold one End of the Line in your Hand; then place the upper End of your Hook very easily in the Cleft of a long Hazle-stick, that it may easily slip out. With this Stick and Hook thus baited, search for Holes under Stones,
Tim-

Timber, Roots, or about Flood-gates, Weirs, or Piles, and put the Bait leisurely therein. If there be a good *Eel*, give her Time, and she will take it: Be sure she hath swallowed it, and then very leisurely draw her out by Degrees: For she lying double in her Hole, will with the Help of her Tail break all, unless you give Time for her to be wearied with pulling, and so haul her out by Degrees, not pulling too hard.

This Way of catching *Eels* is only to be practised when the Waters are low, and on a hot Summer's Day.

Bobbing for *Eels* is thus performed: Take the largest *Garden-worms* well scoured, and with a Needle run a strong Thread through them, from End to End. In this Manner string so many, that at last you may wrap them slackly about your Hand a dozen Times at least; then tie them fast with the two Ends of the Thread, that they may hang in so many long Boughts or Hanks. Fasten all to a small strong Cord, about two Yards long; and about a handful or eight Inches above the Worm, tie the Cord on a Knot: Then get a Lead-plumb three Quarters of a Pound Weight, shaped like a Pyramid, and bore a Hole thro' the Middle of this Lead from End to End, so as the Cord may easily pass to and fro. Put the upper End of this Cord through the Plumb, (the thick End of the Plumb being downwards) and let the Plumb rest on the Knot on the Cord above the Worms. Fix the

upper End of the Cord to a strong and long Pole. Thus prepared, angle in a muddy Water, and either in the Deeps or Sides of Streams, and you will feel the *Eels* tug strongly and eagerly at them. When you think they have swallowed the Worms as far as they can, gently draw up your Worms and *Eels*; and when you have them near the Top of the Water, hoist them suddenly to Land. Thus you may take three or four at once, and good ones too, if there be plenty.

These two Ways of Snigling and Bobbing are proper only for *Eels*, no other Fish being to be caught after that Manner.

There is the *Conger* or great *Sea-Eel*, besides the Sorts I have mentioned, which has a white, fat, and sweet Fish; nourishing to Excess, and therefore dangerous, because of Surfeits. They are first par-boiled in Water, with Salt and sweet Herbs, and then broiled: Or, you may first par-boil them in Water and Salt, then highly season them, and bake them in a Pot. The small ones are taken between *Gloucester* and *Tewksbury*, and below *Warrington* in *Lancashire*; the great Ones only in the Salt Seas.

Eel-pouts, another Fish somewhat resembling the *Eel*, but esteemed better, are also found in some Rivers. Their Places of Resort are the same as the *Eel's*, and they are to be taken in Peals of Thunder and heavy Rain, which drives them from their Holes. The properest

perek Bait for them is a small *Gudgeon*; and when they are large, they afford good Sport.

Some advise to angle for the common *Eel* upon the Grabble, with *Lobworm*, *Minnow*, or *Gudgeon*, and sometimes you may have Sport after a Shower: But as this is not frequently practised, I shall not take any farther notice of the Methods of taking them here mentioned.

*The slimy Eel but little Sport can make,
Beyond what School-boys find in Whip and Snake,
Yet after Thunder Show'rs your Fortune try,
With Lobworms, and strong Lines a large
Supply,
And while your Stock endures, you need not
fear the Fry.*

C H A P. XII.

Of the Roach and the Rud.

THE *Roach* is a coarse bony Fish, of no great Reputation for his Taste, and his Spawn is accounted much better than any other Part of him. As the *Carp* is called the *Water-Fox*, on Account of his Cunning, so the *Roach* is surnamed the *Water-Sheep*, for his Simplicity. His Spawning-Time is in *June*, when he is scabby and unwholesome. But both he and the *Dace* recover Strength, and grow in Season in a Fortnight after Spawning, as the *Barbel* and *Chub* in a Month, the

Trout in four Months, and the *Salmon* in the same Time, if he gets into the Sea, and afterwards into fresh Water.

Roaches are reckoned much better in the River than in a Pond, though Ponds usually breed the biggest. Some Authors mention a Kind of bastard *Roach* that breeds in Ponds, with a very forked Tail, and of a very small Size, which they say is produced by the *Bream* and the right *Roach*. These are by many thought the same as *Ruds*; and some Ponds are stored with them beyond Belief. They differ, says Mr. *Walton*, from the true *Roach*, as much as a *Herring* from a *Pilchard* and are now to be found in many Rivers.

The *Roach* is a leather-mouthed Fish, and has a Kind of Saw-like Teeth in his Throat. He makes an Angler excellent Sport, especially if large, as many are. Both *Roach* and *Dace* bite all Day long from Sun-rising till Sun-set. The chief Bait for *Roach* is boiled *Malt*, *Cadwos*, *Gentles*, *white* and *red Paste*, and sometimes *Flies*; but if you angle for them in windy Weather, use the small *Red-worm*. They frequent gentle Streams which are shallow, and will bite freely. When Winter begins to approach, they retire into the Deeps, at the End of strong Currents: Here you will have Occasion to use more Lead than ordinary; and consequently a larger Float, and a stronger Line to bear the Lead: And here, as well as in other Places, you must angle about twelve Inches from the Bottom. The

Ant-

Ant-fly is another good Bait for *Roach*. They who desire to have much Diversion, and to take many *Roach*, are directed to gratify themselves in the following Manner: Having provided a sufficient Quantity of *Gentles*, go below *London-Bridge*, as far as *Shadwell*, *Ratcliff*, *Limehouse*, or thereabouts; then take a Boat, and fasten it to the Stern of a *Collier*, or some other large Vessel, which has lain some Time in the River, and with a short Rod, and a Line not exceeding four Foot in Length, angle there; and remember to put three or four *Gentles* upon your Hook at one Time. Let your Float be twelve Inches distant from the Top of your Rod; and lay in your Bait as close to the Stern of the Ship as you can, and let it swim about three Yards. This must be done when the Tide begins to ebb, and you will not fail of good Sport for two Hours at least; and what you catch will be large.

The *Rud*, (whether the same with Mr. *Walton's* bastard *Roach*, or no, I will not determine) is however a Sort of *Roach*, but much preferable, and of a golden Colour: He is strong, broad, and thick, and feeds near the Top of the Water. The principal Baits for this Fish are *Red-worms* and *Flies*. They will feed very generously, and divert the *Angler*; for they struggle hard, and are very strong.

*The Roach no mighty Art, no Skill require:
Each puny Sportsman here himself may tire.*

*Tho' ev'n for these, if you would angle fine,
You'll find the Sport best answer your Design.
Your Bait put on, they bite with eager Haste,
And swallow Cod-bait, Gentles, Flies, or Paste:
Nay, Worms in windy Weather they'll de-*

avour,
Presented ev'ry where, and ev'ry Hour.

*The Rud, a Kind of Roach, all ting'd with
Gold,*

*Strong, broad, and thick, most lovely to behold,
High on the Surface will with Freedom bite
At small Red-worms, or Flies, his like Delight.
But Angler, if you meet him, pray take Care,
He struggles long, and breaks the single Hair.*

C H A P. XIII.

Of the D A C E.

TH O' the *Dace* hath many Properties in common with the *Roach*, yet he merits a particular Chapter in this Book. He is a bright handsome Fish; spawns generally in *March*; loves a gravelly Scour; is very shy and wary like the *Trout*, and when frightened, retires into the Deeps. Besides the Rules that are common to him and the *Roach*, these peculiar ones are given by a *London* Angler.

Dace are to be taken on the Surface of the Water, with a fine, nice, *artificial Fly*, and will rise sooner at the black, than any other Colour. If you angle upon a Scour, use *Gentles*, or *Paste*; if in the Deeps, let *sodden Malt*, or
House-

House-flies be the Bait ; and never suffer your Line, which should be of a single Hair, to be above two or three Foot under Water. They will also take the little *Red-worm*, *Caddews*, or *Grasshopper* : With the former of these you may use the smallest Float, and one Shot to poize it ; and when the *Grasshopper* is your Bait, pull off the Legs, put the Point of your Hook under his Tail, and run it through and bury it in the back Part of his Head. Remember to strike the *Dace* nimbly, as soon as ever he bites. It is proper always to conceal yourself as much as possible, if you expect any great Sport.

Dace may be also taken with *Flesh-flies*, upon the Surface of the Water ; into whole Backs, between their Wings, you must put your Hook, which should be small. They bite in the Morning and Evening. You must then provide a *Cane Rod*, which is the lightest of any : Let it be at least seventeen Foot in Length : And your Line, which should, from the Middle downwards, consist of single Hairs, must be somewhat longer than your Rod. You ought also to be furnished with a sufficient Quantity of small *House-flies*, which keep in a Glass Bottle, stopped with a Cork. With these repair, especially about seven or eight o'Clock in a Summer's Evening, to a *Mill-Stream*, and having fixed three or four Hooks with single Hair-links, not above four Inches long, to your Line, bait them with the *Flies*, and angle upon the Surface of the Water on the smoothest

smoothest Part, at the End of the Mill-Stream. The *Dace* will rise freely, especially if the Sun does not shine on that Part of the Water where you cast your Line, and you may take two or three at a Time. This Sport will continue as long as Day-light will permit you to see your *Flies*.

In the same Manner *Dace* will also rise at the *Ant-fly* upon the Surface of the Water, if used in a Morning at the Foot of a Current, or Mill-Stream, or on the Scour before the Sun comes upon the Water.

If you angle for them upon the *Thames*, your Ground-bait must be made of Bran, a Crust of white Bread soaked and worked up into round Balls, with little Stones in the Middle. Take a Boat; and when you chuse a Place let it be under the Wind, when the Water is smooth: Plumb the Depth, and let your Lead be eight Inches from the Bottom: Then cast in your *Ground-bait* about four Yards above the Head of your Boat, and two or three of the Balls nearer to you, and lay in your Bait exactly over your Ground-bait. Take your Swim as long as your Rod and Line will permit, and always remember not to let it swim too far. When you draw it up, give a little Jerk; and when your Float sinks, then strike; but be not too eager to take your Fish out of the Water. This Method may also be observed in angling for *Roach*.

A *Dace* fresh taken, and scotched, and broiled, eats sweeter, and is more palatable than

than a *Fresh-Herring*. *Dace* seldom exceed ten Inches in Length.

Having already observed, that *Dace* spawn generally in *March*, I must add, that some affirm, they spawn twice a Year, without saying in which Month they spawn the second Time. Certain it is however, that small and middle-sized *Dace* have been taken at the latter End of *October* and Beginning of *November*, all full of Melts and Roes; and those Fish have usually a finer Flavour than any taken in Summer.

The two following Discoveries, by our modern Angler, are perhaps worth communicating in this Place: The first is this: If the Water be high, so as to rise almost to the Banks of the River, then fasten to your Line an *artificial Fly*, called the *Caterpillar-fly*; then take a large *yellow Gentle*, (the yellower the better) run the Hook through the Skin of him, and draw him up to the Tail of your *artificial Fly*: This being done, whip with it on the Surface of the Water; and if you are diligent and expert, you may assure yourself of good Sport.

The second Thing is, that if you angle where two Mill-Streams are going at one and the same Time, let it be in the Eddy between the two Streams: First make use of your Plummet; and if the Water be deep, you must angle within a Foot of the Bottom, and perhaps you will find but little Sport. But if it proves to be shallow, that is, about the Depth
of

of two Foot, or not exceeding three, then bait your Hook with three large *Gentles*: Use a *Cork-Float*, which ought not to be a Foot and a half from the Hook, and have a quick Eye to strike at the very first Bite; for if there be any large *Dace* in the Mill-pool, they will resort to the Eddy between the two Streams.

The same Gentleman observes farther, that if every Angler would consider, that *Gentles* are not only the most universal, but also the most alluring Bait, they would always carry some of them with them. He affirms, he has taken *Trout* with *Gentles*, when every Kind of *Worm* has been refused, and *artificial Flies* rejected: And even to all sorts of Fresh-water or River Fish, *Pike* and *Salmon* excepted, they have proved an acceptable Bait; nor does he doubt but they would be so to them, could it be so contrived, as to fix them upon a Hook that could hold either *Salmon* or *Pike*.

*The Silver Dace, no despicable Fish,
 May please the Angler both in Sport and Dish.
 In Summer on the Scours the Wanton lies,
 And, if unseen, he all Day long will rise:
 But ne'er so gamesome, ne'er so brisk before,
 Once seen he flies you, and will rise no more.
 Behind some Covert then thyself conceal,
 And with the Flesh-fly thou wilt seldom fail.
 Floats uselefs are, unless the Worm you try,
 And with the rising Flash successfully
 Descend the Stream; then any Thing he takes,
 And, like the Trout, but small Distinction makes.*

C H A P. XIV.

Of the GUDGEON.

THE *Gudgeon* is a Fish of excellent Taste, and reputed to be very wholesome; has a fine Shape, is of a silver Colour, and beautified with black Spots both on his Body and Tail. The whiter he is, the better; and, when in Perfection, he well deserves the Name of the *River-Smelt*. He breeds in *March* or *April*; some say two or three Times in the Year, and always in the Summer. He is commended for a Fish of excellent Nourishment, easy of Digestion, and increasing good Blood. He delights in sandy gravelly Bottoms, gentle Streams, and small Rivers. He feeds on the Ground, and there feasts himself in sharp Streams, and on the Gravel. He and the *Barbel* resemble each other in this, neither of which hunt for Flies at any Time, as most other Fishes do. He is an excellent Fish to enter a young Angler, being easy to be taken with a small *Red-worm*, on, or very near to, the Ground.

When you angle for him in Shallows, stir the Ground or Sand with a Pole, to make them come together. He bites all Day from the End of *March* till *Michaelmas*, but seldom in cold Weather, after a Flood, or the Dark. *Gilt-tails* and *Brandlings* are his chief Baits. He is one of those leather-mouthed Fish that
has

has his Teeth in his Troat, and will hardly be loft off from the Hook when once struck.

Gudgeons are ufually fcattered up and down every River in the Shallows in the Heat of Summer: But in *Autumn*, when the Weeds begin to grow four or rot, and the Weather colder, they gather together, and get into the deeper Parts of the Water; and are to be fished for with your Hook always touching the Ground, if you use a Float or a Cork: But many will fish for the *Gudgeon* by Hand, with a running Line upon the Ground, without a Cork; and it is an excellent Way, if you have a gentle Rod, and as gentle a Hand. Be not too hafty with him when he bites, for he fometimes only nibbles the Bait.

Gudgeons will take *Gentles*, or the *Cow-dung Bob*; but the fmall *Red-worm* is what pleafes them beft. If you can find a Bridge or Plank over a fmall River, chufe to angle underneath for *Gudgeons*; for they love the Shade; and are fo far from being fhly, that you may not only appear in Sight, but if you drive them from their Place of Refort, they will immediately return. A fingle Hair Line, a fine taper Rod, a Float, and a fmall Hook, is what moft ufe, and the Bait to drag upon the Ground. In fine:

*Tho' little Art the Gudgeon may fuffice,
His Sport is good, and with the greateft vies.
Few Lessons will the Angler's Ufe fupply,
Where he's fo ready of himfelf to die.*

For

For, if no Heats or Flashes interpose,
His Prize he'll bold, and yours you cannot lose.

C H A P. XV.

Of the POPE, or RUFF.

THE *Pope*, by many called a *Ruff*, is not known to be in some Rivers. He is much like the *Perch* for his Shape, and taken to be better; but will not grow to be bigger than a large *Gudgeon*. He is all over rough, and hath sharp or prickly Fins. His Colour is brown and dusky above; but a pale yellow underneath. A double Course of Circles marks him by the Jaws. There is a Line goes along his Back, fastened as it were to the Body with a Cross-thread. His Fins, which he erects when angry, and Tail, are spotted with black Spots. No Fish that swims is of a pleasanter Taste; and he is also excellent to enter a young Angler, for he is a greedy Biter. They usually lie Abundance of them together, in one reserved Place, where the Water is deep, and runs quietly. And an easy Angler, if he has found where they lie, may catch forty or fifty, or sometimes twice as many at a Standing. You may even angle with two or three Hooks, and pull up the same Number of Fishes at a Throw.

You must fish for him with a small *Red-worm*, or a *Gentle*; and if you bait the Ground with Earth, it is excellent. Use a Float, and
angle

234 *The BRITISH ANGLER. P. II.*
angle as for a *Perch*. The River *Tare* in *Norfolk* is almost peculiar for Plenty of *Ruffs*, and therefore I conclude with only four Lines.

*A bold free Fish, the Perch-resembling Ruff,
When found their Haunts, will furnish Sport
enough ;
The tempting Bait at no Time will refuse,
But Gentles chief, and little Red-worms chuse.*

C H A P. XVI.

Of the BLEAK.

THE *Bleak*, or *fresh-water Sprat*, is ever in Motion, and therefore called by some the *River-Swallow*: For as we observe the *Swallow* most Evenings in Summer to be ever in Motion, making short and quick Turns when he endeavours to catch Flies in the Air; so does the *Bleak* at the Top of the Water. His Back is of a pleasant sad, or Sea-water Green; his Belly white, and shining as the Mountain-Snow: And doubtless, says Mr. *Walton*, (upon a Presumption that our *Bleaks* and *Anchovies* are the same Fish) though he have the Fortune to be neglected, yet the *Bleak* ought to be much valued, though we want the Skill the *Italians* have to turn them into *Anchovies*. This Fish may be caught with a *Paster-noster Line*, that is, six or eight very small Hooks tied along the Line, half a Foot, or three or four Inches, one above the other.

other. Five or six may be caught thus at one Time, if you bait with *Gentles*, than which nothing is better. You may angle deeper for them in the *Thames* than in any other River.

Or this Fish may be caught with a fine artificial Fly, of a sad brown Colour, very small, and the Hook answerable. There is no better Sport than whipping for *Bleaks* in a Boat, or on a Bank in the swift Water in a Summer's Evening, with a Hazle-top, about five or six Foot long, and a Line twice the Length of the Rod.

There are (if any Credit may be given to Report) many who in *Italy* will catch *Swallows* thus, but more especially *Martens*. This Bird-Angler stands on the Top of a Steeple to do it, and with a Line twice as long as I have spoken of. A *Hern*, that constantly frequented one Place, has been caught flying, with a Hook baited with a big Minnow or small *Gudgeon*. The Line and Hook must be strong, and tied to some loose Staff, so big that she cannot fly away with it, and the Line not exceeding two Yards.

The *Sea-Bleak* is preferred to the River, because the latter are said to be sometimes mad in Summer, by Reason of a Worm in their Stomachs. *Gentles*, the *Dub-Fly*, and the same Baits as are good for *Roach*, will succeed with the *Bleak*. But the *Fly* yields the greatest Pleasure, and therefore that alone is remembered in our Verses.

*The Bleak small Flies upon the Surface takes,
And seldom the least Hesitation makes.*

*With an observing Eye, and curious Hand,
In little Time you Numbers may command.*

C H A P. XVII.

Of the Minnow or Penk, the Loach, the Bull-head or Miller's-thumb, and the Stickle-bag.

TH E R E are in our fresh Waters three or four other Sorts of little Fishes, which, tho' for their Minuteness they may be hardly thought worth mentioning, may some of them, for the Delicacy of their Flesh, be compared with any of the larger Species. They are usually full of Spawn all the Summer Months, and breed often, like some of the smaller Sorts of Quadrupedes; and when the Eggs are thus animated, they soon arrive to their full Growth and Perfection. It is providential that they breed both often and numerously; for besides other Accidents, they are both a Prey and Bait for other Fish.

The *Minnow*, when in perfect Season, and not sick, which is only presently after Spawning, has a kind of dappled or waved Colour, like a Panther, on his Sides, inclining to a greenish and sky Colour; his Belly being milk-white, and his Back almost black or blackish. He is a sharp Biter at a small Worm, and in hot Weather makes excellent Sport

Chap. 17. Of the MINNOW, &c. 237
Sport for young Anglers, or for Boys and Women that love that Recreation.

The *Minnow* appears first in *March*, continues till *Michaelmas*, and then betakes himself to the Mud, Weeds, or Wood in Rivers ; to secure himself from Floods, devouring Trouts, and other Fishes of Prey.

He least frequents deep, still Places, where *Trouts* or great Fish ply ; neither stirs in the Night, nor in dark windy Weather, for fear of becoming a Prey to his Enemies, who at such Times principally bite and range about for Food. His most usual Time is from an Hour after Sun-rising, if the Day prove fair, till an Hour before Sun-set. His Baits are chiefly small *Red-worms*, *Gilt-tail*, *Brandling*, *Cod-bait*, and the like. He is caught either at Mid-water, or near, or close to the Bottom. Use a Float in angling for him.

The *Loach* is a pleasant Fish, light, delicate in Taste, wholesome, and of excellent Nutriment ; breeding and feeding in clear swift Brooks or Rills, living in the sharpest Streams, and on the Gravel, and often under Stones. He something resembles an *Eel* in Shape, and the Females are in the Summer often full of Spawn. They are always caught on the Bottom, the Bait touching the Ground, and their best Baits are the small *Red-worm*, *Gilt-tail*, or *Meadow-worm*.

The *Loach* grows not to above a Finger's Length, and no thicker than is suitable to that Length. He has a Beard or Wattels like a
Bar-

Barbel. He has two Fins on his Sides, four at his Belly, and one at his Tail. He is dappled with many black or brown Spots, and his Mouth is, *Barbel*-like, under his Nose.

The *Miller's-thumb*, or *Bull-head*, is a Fish of no pleasing Form, being compared to the *Sea-toad-fish*, for Similitude of Shape. He has a Head big and flat, much greater than suitable to his Body; a Mouth very wide, and usually gaping. He is without Teeth, but his Lips are very rough, like a Fly. He hath two Fins near his Gills, roundish or crested, two under the Belly, two on the Back, one below the Vent, and the Fin of his Tail is round. Nature hath painted the Body of this Fish with whitish, blackish, and brownish Spots. The Females are usually full of Eggs or Spawn all the Summer, which swell their Vents almost into the Form of a Dug. They begin to spawn about *April*. In the Winter, the *Minnow*, the *Loach*, and the *Bull-head*, dwell in the Mud like the *Eel*.

In Summer, the *Bull-head* hides himself in Holes, or amongst Stones in clear Water; and in very hot Days will lie a long Time very still, and sun himself, being easily seen upon any flat Stone or Gravel. He will then suffer an Angler to put a Hook baited with a small *Worm* very near his Mouth, and he never refuses to bite, nor indeed to be caught with the worst of Anglers.

There is also a little Fish called a *Sticklebag*, without Scales, which hath his Body guarded
with

Chap. 17. *Of the MINNOW, &c.* 239
 with several Prickles. He is good for nothing
 in Summer, his only Season, but to make
 Sport for Boys and Women-Anglers, and to
 feed Fish of Prey, as *Trouts* in particular, who
 will bite at him as at a *Minnow*, or better, if
 your Hook be rightly baited with him: For
 he may be so hung, as that his Tail whirling
 like the Sail of a Wind-mill, will make him
 turn more quick than any *Minnow* can. And
 it is the nimble Turning of the Bait that is the
 Perfection of *Minnow-Fishing*. Put your Hook
 into his Mouth, and out at his Tail; and
 then having first tied him with white Thread
 a little above his Tail, and placed him after
 such a Manner on your Hook as he may be
 disposed to turn, sew up his Mouth to
 your Line. If you put him on dexterously, so
 that he turns quick, he will tempt any *Trout*:
 And you may alter his Position on the Line,
 till you bring him to this. The *Loach* will
 have the same Effect, if not too big.

To conclude the History of our River
 Fishes :

*The Minnow, Flatt'rer-like, is ever nigh,
 The Angler's Plague, for Baits a good Supply.
 To catch the Sticklebag each School-boy knows,
 And Loach, and Bull-heads, which for Baits
 are chose,
 And bite as often as the Angler throws.* }

C H A P. XVIII.

Of Local Fishes, or those which are peculiar to certain Waters.

TH O' I have done with all our *fresh Water-Fish* that are common to Anglers, I might be thought inexcusable were I to omit the *Char* and the *Guiniad*, which, though they can fall in the Way of very few Sportsmen, have been mentioned and described by the best Authors who have writ on Angling. I call them *local Fish*, because they are never found but in particular *Standing Waters*, notwithstanding that those Waters have a Communication with Rivers.

The *Char* is found in *Lancashire*, in a Mere called *Winander-Mere*; which, according to *Cambden*, is the largest Mere or standing Water in this Nation, being ten Miles in Length. Some say it is as smooth at the Bottom as if it were paved with polished Marble. The *Char* never exceeds fifteen or sixteen Inches in Length. It is spotted like a *Trout*, and has scarce a Bone but on the Back. I do not know whether it makes the Angler any great Sport, but it is universally thought a very delicate Fish, and deserves to be taken notice of, because it is a Rarity, and of so high Esteem.

The *Guiniad*, according to the same *Cambden*, and others, is peculiar to *Pemble-Mere* in *Cheshire*. The River *Dee*, says this Author, which runs by *Chester*, springs in *Merionethshire*,

shire, and as it runs toward *Chester*, it passes through the said *Pemble Mere*, which is a large Water: And it is observed, that tho' the River *Dee* abounds with *Salmon*, and *Pemble Mere* with the *Guiniad*, yet there is never any *Salmon* caught in the Mere, nor any *Guiniad* in the River.

It is observed of *Winander Mere*, where the *Char* are found, that in the deepest Parts, none of the Lines or Nets which Anglers commonly use, can reach the Bottom of it: Some say that this Fish is found also in *Conington Mere*, which is not far from the other; but then it is supposed that they are carried thither from *Winander Mere*, perhaps through both of their respective Rivers, which enter the Sea at one Mouth. This is not improbable, since though the *Char* never stays, so as to be taken, out of Standing Water, he may easily bear with such a Voyage, out of what may justly enough be called his proper Element. Dr. *Leigh* says, the *Char* in *Conington Mere* are better than those in *Winander Mere*; but there are Reasons to think that he was prejudiced in this Article.

There is a Pool in *Caernarvonshire*, called *Limperis-Pool*, which breeds a peculiar Kind of Fish, to be seen no where else, called by the Inhabitants a *Tor-cock*. I meet with no other Description of him, but that his Belly is reddish. And about *Fornby* in *Lancashire*, there are little Fishes caught in a black Water under the Turfs.

I might have reserved the *Ruff* or *Pope* to be spoken of in this Chapter, had not Custom prevailed to the contrary: For though there are *Ruffs* found in many other Rivers, none are equal to those of the *Yare* in *Norfolk*. The same Thing is observed of *Lampreys*, which in the *Severn* excel those of the *Thames*, and every other River: And the *Mullet*, (a Sea-Fish to be spoken of in the next Chapter) when he leaves the salt Water, is very nice in his Choice of fresh. Also the *Grayling*, before described, is no where so plenty as in the *Dove* in *Derbyshire*. But I have done with a Subject that can be of so little Use to the Angler, who need only remember, That,

*The Char and Guiniad never change their
Shires,
But live in Winander and Pemble Meres.*

C H A P. XIX.

Of Flounders, Mulletts, and Smelts.

I Come now to certain Species of Fish, which, though bred in the Sea, and properly Inhabitants of the salt Water, are yet frequently taken in our Rivers, especially in some of them: And these are principally *Flounders*, *Mulletts*, and *Smelts*.

Flook

Flook or *Flounders* are firm and good Fish; so innocent in their Nature, and so nutritive, that Physicians order them to be given to sick Persons, when their Stomachs cannot digest any other Food. On such Occasions, those which frequent and are taken in the fresh Water Rivers, are esteemed best. They are in Season all the Year, except the Time of their Spawning, which is from the latter End of *June* to the Middle of *July*; and then they are sick, flabby, and unwholsome. At such a Juncture, if any of them be taken, you may perceive small Worms about the Length of half an Inch, and in some the Length of an Inch, which have made a Bed for themselves in the Backs of the Fish.

Flounders are a shy and wary Fish, and feed at Bottom: Their common and most delightful Places of Resort, are the Sides of Sand-banks, cast up by Mill-streams or Weirs, or by strong Eddies. Sometimes they are found at the Tail of Mill-streams, or at a more remote Distance from them, in deep Waters, under or close to the Bank-Sides, especially if the Bottom be Sand or Gravel, and has a Declivity. If you find a Hole in a River, which looks ever so likely, and there is Mud at the Bottom, it will be lost Labour to angle therein; for the least Mud or Filth choaks *Flounders*.

As they are greedy and voracious, they will bite at any *Red-worm*: But the *Lobworm*, as it is the largest, will entice them soonest, pro-

vided it be well scoured. The usual Way of Angling for them, is to lie upon the Grabble ; that is, to put so much Lead upon your Line, about twelve or fourteen Inches distant from your Hook, that it may keep it steady at Bottom, the Fait having Liberty to be twirled about by the Water.

If you use a Float, let it lie upon the Surface ; and when it first cocks up, and is afterwards drawn under Water, you may then conclude that the *Flounder* has taken, or is taking your Bait. Remember to allow him Time ; for he will suck all the *Worm* into his Mouth before he gorges it. The Hook which you use cannot be too small, if you can get your Bait upon it.

The best *Plaice* have the blackest Spots on their Body, and the best *Flounders* the reddest. As the *Flounder* is a Fish without Scales, he is not eaten by the *Jews*. He bites all the Day, from Sun-rise until Sun-set, in *April*, *May*, *June*, *July*, and Part of *August*.

Mullets are a salt Water Fish, well-tasted, delicate, and much admired. During the Summer-Season they come into the Rivers which lie contiguous with the Sea, as often as the Tide flows. Great Plenty of them may be taken with an Angle Rod, which, as well as the Line, must be strong.

They will rise, like a *Trout* or *Salmon*, at a *artificial Fly*, which must be larger than what is used for the *Trout* ; and they will also take a *Worm* under Water, if you angle about

two Foot from the Bottom. They are wonderfully shy and wary, but feed as freely as any Fish, and will afford much Sport and Diversion. They abound chiefly along the Southern and South-west Parts of *England*, which lie opposite to *France*. The River *Aron* in *Suffex*, at *Arundel*, and *Ax* in the County of *Devon*, about two Miles below the Town of *Axminster*, yield vast Quantities of them every Time the Tide flows.

Smelts are a fine Fish, with a delicate Flavour, and are in Season twice a Year. They make their first Appearance about the Middle of *March*, when the best are taken at *Chelsea* and *Hammersmith*. At the second Time of their coming into the River *Thames*, which is in the Month of *August*, they seldom reach higher than *London-Bridge*; and the finest and largest are then taken opposite to *Deptford* and *Greenwich*. In angling for them, use the *Pater-noster* Line of one Hair, and let your Bait be *Gentles* or *white Paste*.

*The Angler's Art, oft' by the Flounder felt,
 The Mullet luscious, and the fragrant Smelt,
 Extends beyond the native River Fry,
 For Flock with Worms, for Mullet with
 Dub-fly :
 For Smelts, your Gentles are the best Supply.* }

C H A P. XX.

Of Fish taken on the Rocks, and at Sea.

WE are assured, (for I never practised this Sport myself,) that there are but four Sorts of Fish which are generally taken by Rock-fishing, namely *Sea Bream*, *Flounders*, *Whiting-Pollock*, and *Rock-Whiting*.

Sea Breams are not so broad and flat, nor altogether so large as *River Breams*, when full grown, seldom exceeding twelve or fourteen Inches at most; but then they are fuller-bodied, more plump and thick, and inclinable to be round. Their Colour is generally a pale Red, which turns to a deeper Red when they are dress'd. They are well-tasted, but full of Bones; and this may be the Reason why some People account them a coarse Fish. They afford good Diversion in the Water, and the larger Sort will try the Skill and Judgment of the Fisherman. They are not proper to be eaten by those who have a weak Stomach; for though they are nourishing and strengthening, yet they are not easily digested.

There is very little, if any real Distinction between the *River Flounders*, and those taken in the Salt-water; the former coming originally from the Sea. However, by continuing in fresh Water, they become firmer, and better tasted, than those which are taken in the salt Water. This may be easily proved, by comparing

paring the *Flounders* which are caught beyond the *Buoy-in-the-Nore*, with those taken in the *Thames* above Bridge, or in the Rivers which run into the *Thames*. However, the salt Water *Flounders* are much larger than those of the fresh Water, and are esteemed by some to be equally as good : And, in Fact, it would puzzle the nicest Palate, to distinguish the one from the other when dressed. As all this Species of Fish, if large, draw a great deal of Water, on account of their Shape, so the salt Water *Flounders* will afford good Sport.

The *Whiting Pollock* is somewhat round in the Body, and is well-tasted, nourishing, and as fleaky as *Cod*. It seldom exceeds twelve Inches in Length, and in Colour is a darkish Grey. It struggles hard when hooked ; and, by making a long Defence for its Life, makes also much Diversion for the Fisherman.

The *Rock Whiting* is a Species of the *Whiting* and *Whiting Pollock*, but differs from both, and yet is often palmed upon the Ignorant for true *Whiting*. It is not altogether of such a Dark-grey as the *Whiting Pollock*, nor so bright in Colour as the *Whiting*. Its chief Place of Residence is among the Rocks, from whence it takes Part of its Name. It affords good Nourishment, is easy of Digestion, and agrees with weak Stomachs. It makes but an indifferent Defence for its Life, and consequently not much Sport for the Fisherman. It is well-

tasted ; and as to its Size, is much the same with the *Whiting*.

These are the different Sorts of Fish, which are generally taken at Rock-fishing ; though it often happens that large *Crabs* are taken the same Way.

The Fish taken the other Way, by *Sea-fishing* in a Boat, are usually the common *Whiting*, and the *Haddock*. The former are well known to be most innocent, pleasant Food, and are so common as not to want any Description. As to the *Haddock*, it so much resembles the *Cod*, especially when full grown, as sometimes to be sold for it to the Ignorant. It is a well-tasted nutritious Fish, tho' reputed coarse : And, if we may credit the Monkish Legends, it was this Fish that the Apostle *Peter* caught, at his Master's Command, with the Piece of Money in his Mouth to pay Tribute. The two black Spots under his Gills, which, the Monks say, are the Marks of the Apostle's Finger and Thumb, were what gave rise to this fabulous Imposition, in an Age when Religion consisted of little else. Small *Haddocks* are often sold for large *Whittings*.

There is also Fishing at Sea when a Ship is under sail, for *Cod*, *Mackarel*, and large *Haddocks* : And a Method of taking *Sbrimps* and *Prawns*, which gives some Diversion on the Sea-shore : But I leave the Particulars of these Things to the other Part of this Book, which will treat of the *Practice of Angling*.

*The Bream, the Flounder, Fishermen re-
port,*
The darkish Whiting of each bastard Sort,
Upon the Rocks afford the Angler Sport.
At Sea, the Haddock and true Whiting oft,
In Boats; in Ships, the Cod and Mack'rel
soft,
With well-requited Pains he hauls aloft.

End of the SECOND PART.





T H E
British A N G L E R.

P A R T the T H I R D.
Teaching the whole Practice of Angling.

C H A P. I.

General Observations regarding the Angler and his Sport.



H O' I have mentioned almost every Thing in the several Chapters of the *Second Part*, concerning the *respective Fish* there treated of; yet it is necessary the *young Angler* should have some more general Instructions, thrown miscellaneously together, concerning his own *Conduct*, the *Haunts* and *Feed* of

Chap. I. *The Practice of Angling.* 251
of *Fishes*, the proper *Seasons* of *Angling*, and
the *Practice* of every particular *Species* of it.
To these I shall add several Observations up-
on *Rivers*, particularly the *Thames*; Direc-
tions for making a *Fish-pond*; Rules for *dress-
ing* the various Sorts of Fish, with such other Par-
ticulars as may be expected in a Book of this
Nature. It is possible I may repeat some
Things that have been before specified; but I
rather chuse that Method, than to omit any
Particular that may be of Service to my young
Pupils.

To begin with the *Angler* himself, let his
Apparel not be of a *light* or *shining* Colour,
which will reflect upon the Water, and fright
away the Fish, but let it be of a *dark-brown*
Colour, and sit close to his Body. *Fish* are
terrified with any the least Sight or Motion:
Therefore, by all means, keep out of Sight,
when you angle in a clear Water, either by
sheltering behind some Bush or Tree, or by
standing as far off the River's Side, as you can
possibly. To effect this the better, a long
Rod at Ground, and a long Rod and Line
at artificial Fly, are absolutely necessary.
Neither ought you to move much on the
Banks, next the Water you angle in, especi-
ally for *Trouts*, *Chubs*, or *Carps*.

When you angle at *Ground* in a clear Wa-
ter, or dabble with natural Flies, angle up the
River; but in muddy Water, or with Dub-
fly, angle down the River.

Before you set out to angle, see that your Baits be good, sweet, fine, agreeable to the River and Season, and proper for the Fish you design to angle for: Likewise, that your Tackle be suitable and neat; for, if otherwise, you had better continue at home, because you will not only tire and weary yourself, but lose your Labour, which to a young Angler will be no small Discouragement.

When you have hooked a great Fish, let him play and tire himself within the Water; and have special Care to keep the Rod bent, lest he run to the End of the Line, and break either Hook or Hold. Haul him not too near the Top of the Water, lest by flouncing he break your Line.

Where any *Weeds*, *Roots of Trees*, *Stones*, *Wood*, or other Rubbish are, it is often good, but troublesome Angling: For to such Places Fish resort for Warmth and Security. The same may be said of *Whirl-pools*, which are like Pits in Rivers, and seldom unfurnished of good Fish. Likewise at *Weirs*, *Weir-pools*, *Mill-streams*, *Piles*, *Posts*, and *Pillars of Bridges*, *Flood-gates*, *Cataracts*, and *Falls of Waters*; the *Conflux* of Rivers, the *Eddies* betwixt two Streams, the *Returns* of a Stream, and the *Sides* of a Stream, are good Places generally to angle in.

In the *Summer* all Fish usually lie in the more shallow Part of the River, some in a strong and swift, others in a gentle Stream, except *Carp*, *Tench*, and *Eel*. But in *Winter* all

all fly into the deep, still Places. Where it ebbs and flows Fish sometimes bite best, in the Ebb especially; but rarely at full Water, unless near the Arches of Bridges, Weirs, or Flood-gates.

There is no Difference in Angling in any Part of a Pool, or standing Water; for it is a Prison to all Fish, and they are therefore the sooner taken: But in Rivers, the best Angling is where it is deep and clear at the Bottom; especially if it be a Gravel or Clay, without Mud or Weeds; and if there is a Whirling or Turning in the Water, or a Covert, as a hollow Bank, great Roots of Trees, or long Weeds floating above the Water, where the Fish may hide themselves at certain Times.

Rivers that are *strait* and *level* are not so good to fish in, as those that are *crooked*, and have many Corners and Turnings, Pools and Pits: For Fish get into those Creeks and Channels, and hide themselves in their private Apartments. If the Water be narrow you may fish on both Sides, and the sooner chop upon them; but where broad and deep their Haunt is uncertain. In a Word,

*The fearful Cheven loves the shaded Stream;
Sharp Rills delight the Trout, and Pools the
Bream:*

*In Deeps the speckled Samlet loves to rove,
And marly Swifts allure the Barbel Drove:*

Un-

*Unwary Roach the sandy Bottom chuse,
And Carp the Weeds, and Eels the muddy
Ooze.*

When any Fish have taken the Hook from you, if it be not swallowed into their Gorge, they will live: Either the Water will cause it to rust, and in Time wear away; or the Fish will go to the Bottom, and there root like a Hog on the Gravel, till they either rub it out, or break the Hook in the Middle.

Cast into such Places where you use to angle, once a Week at least, all Sorts of *Corn* boiled soft, *Ale-grains*, or *Wheat-bran* steeped in Blood, *Blood* dried and cut to Pieces, *Snails*, *Worms* chopt into Pieces, Pieces of *Fowl* or *Beast's Guts*, *Guts of Fowl*, *Beast's Livers* cut into Pieces, *Oat-cake* or *Cheese* chewed, ground *Malt*, &c. When you angle for *Carp*, *Tench*, *Cub*, *Roch*, *Dace*, *Barbel* and *Bream*, you cannot feed too often or too much. This Course draws the Fish to the Place you desire, and there keeps them together. Cast also in a few Grains of ground *Malt* or *Beans*, now and then, as you angle, or chewed *Oat-cake* or *Cheese*.

Your Feed for Fish must always rest in that very Place, where you mean to angle, and that your Bait may come to: Therefore, by no means, when you angle in a Stream, cast them in at your Hook, but something above where you angle, lest the Stream carry them beyond the Hook; and so instead of inviting them

them to you, you allure them beyond you. Close the Malt or Ale-grains so fast in Handfuls, that if possible the Water may not part it with the Fall. All Sorts of Baits are good to cast in, whilst you are angling with that particular Bait, especially *Cod-baits*, *Gentles*, *Wasps*, and *Paste*. You will find them snap up that on the Hook the more eagerly, and with less Suspicion.

If you angle at any Place you have twice or thrice baited, and find no Sport, if none has been there before you, or no grand Impediment in the Season or Water appear, you may be assured that either *Pike* or *Perch*, if they breed in that River, have taken up their Quarters there, and scared all the other Fish from thence, for fear of becoming their Prey. Your only Remedy is presently to angle for them, with suitable Tackle and Baits; and when they are caught, the others will repossess themselves of their former Station.

To know what *Bait* and *Fly* any Fish will take, the first you catch of that Kind rip up his Belly, and you may then see his Stomach, lying from the Gills to the small Guts: Take it out very tenderly, and, with a sharp Penknife, cut it open, without bruising, and you will find his Food within it, and thereby discover what Bait at that very Instant he takes best, whether Flies or Ground-baits, and so fit them accordingly. And if you have a good Microscope, you may, with Pleasure and Delight, easily

easily discover the very true Colour, Proportion and Shape of the Fly. Some can even do it pretty well without a Glafs.

Keep the *Sun*, or the *Moon*, if you angle at Night, before you, provided your Eyes can endure it: At least, be sure to have those Planets on your Side; for if they are on your Back, both yourself and Rod will, by the Shadow, give Offence; and every Creature sees farther and clearer, when it looks towards the Light, than the contrary.

All Fish whatever, that swim in clear Rivers, are wholsomer, pleasanter, and far better tasted than those of the same Kind, that live in Pits, Ponds, Mears, and standing Waters.

A Hog-back and a little Head, either to *Trout*, *Salmon*, or any other Fish, are a Sign they are in Season. All Sorts of Fish that have *Scales* on their Bodies, constantly swim together, in Troops and Companies, as the *Roach*, *Dace*, *Chub*, *Gudgeon*, &c. The Females of most Fish are larger than the Males.

Let all Baits and Flies whatsoever fall gently first into the Water, before any other Part of the Line, with as little of the Line as possible, and without any Disturbance, Plunging, or Circling of the Water, which mightily scares and frightens Fish.

Roach and *Dace* recover Strength, and grow in Season within a Fortnight after spawning; *Barbel* and *Chub* within a Month; *Trout*, in

four Months; and the *Salmon* in like Time, if he get into the Sea, and afterwards into fresh Water.

Angle always, if you can, on the *Lee-shore*; and observe, that Fish lie or swim nearer the Bottom, and in deeper Water in Winter than in Summer. They also get near the Bottom in any cold Day, and on the calm Side of the Water: And in the Winter they are caught best at the Mid Time of the Day, and in Sun-shiny Weather.

When you put any living Baits on the Hook, bruise them as little as possible, that they may live long on the Hook after baited.

As to the Baits for particular Fish, I have said enough of that already; only the Angler will do well to remember these four Lines:

*The Fly to Trouts, to Bream the wormy Snare,
Are strong Allurements; Gentles to the Dare:
The Cheven, Cadews, Pike, the lesser Fry
Invite; thus variously the various Species die.*

Let him that would be a *complete Angler*, spend some Time in all Sorts of Waters, Ponds, Rivers, swift and slow, stony, pebbly, gravelly, sandy, muddy, chalky, and slimy; and observe the Differences in the Nature of the Soils and Ground on which they run or stand; and likewise the Nature and Humour of each particular Fish, Water, and Bait. By this Means a Man may become a perfect and judicious Artist, and be able to
take

258 *The* BRITISH ANGLE R.P.III.
take Fish where-ever he angles ; there being
always much Difference between swift, slow,
and standing Waters.

Some advise, that the Angler, when he
takes Store of Fish, should observe the Age
of the Moon : But I cannot help thinking
there is some Superstition in this. However,
it will certainly not be amiss to remark the
Temperature of the preceding Night, and the
Darkness, Brightness, or Windiness of it ; the
Season and Nature of the Morning and Day,
together with the Temperature of the Air, the
Water and Wind, and all other precedent.
concomitant, natural, or adventitious Advan-
tages, that could any ways conduce to his
Sport : And likewise, on the contrary, all
Things that he finds to be Obstacles and Ob-
structions of his Pastime. Let him enter these
methodically in a Book, by referring to which,
with a little Practice, he will be able to raise
Conclusions for the Improvement of this Art.

In all Sorts of Angling, be sure to keep
out of the Fishes Sight, and as far off the Ri-
ver's Bank as possible, unless you angle in a
muddy Water, and then you may approach
nearer.

Several Counties alter the *Time*, and almost
the *Manner* of Fishes Breeding, but especi-
ally the *Time* of their being in *Season* ; as in
the River *Wye*, in *Monmouthshire*, *Salmon* are
in *Season* from *September* to *April* ; but in the
Thames, *Trent*, and most other Rivers, they
are in *Season* almost all the six hot Months.

When

When you angle for *Perch, Chub, Tench, Carp, Dace, Bream, Gudgeon,* and *Ruff,* and have hooked one who after makes his Escape, you will not often have any great Sport at that Standing for one or two Hours after such Misfortune, because the Fish is so frightened, that he chases his Companions out of that Place. Therefore after some Trial, it is best to remove, and angle at some other Standing.

All Fish are of a cold and moist Temperature; but some of the same Species exceed others in Goodness, according to the Nature of the Water, and Places wherein they live. *Sea-Fish* are accounted better than those in fresh Water, as being more savoury, and of a firmer Substance, hotter and drier, and not so viscous, clammy, and slimy, as the fresh Water Fish. Of *Sea-Fish*, those that have *Scales* and firm Substances, are best, and such as are inclosed in *Shells*, as *Oysters, Lobsters,* and *Crabs.* Fish that live in *pure Water* tossed to and fro with Waves, are better than those that live in calm and muddy Waters, that are little agitated; and those that live near sandy rocky Shores, are better than where there is much Slime and Mud. But Fish are generally the fattest, though not the sweetest, that are fed in muddy, weedy Rivers.

When you angle for any Sort of Fish, be sure that That Fish be then in Season: Else your Labour is intirely lost; for Fish out of Season are the worst Sort of Meat.

A *great* Fish bites more calmly and moderately than a *small* one; for these latter snatch and run away with the Bait, without any Care or Deliberation. So an old Fish that hath been pricked in the Gills or Guts, is very cautious in making a second Adventure.

There are many Circumstances that conduce much to the feeding of *Pikes, Perch, Chub, Carp, Roach, Dace, and Bream*; as particularly, Conveniency of Harbour; for they that lie among Weeds and foggy Places, prove the fattest, though not always the sweetest: They are there secure from the Assaults and Disturbance of Enemies, and enjoy a more safe and contented Repose: Rest and Quietness being as natural and helpful to their feeding as to other Creatures. Also, some Waters may be more nourishing than others; for a thick Sort of Water, if it be not foul and muddy, is of a better Consistency, and the Parts better disposed and qualified for Nutrition, than those of a more thin and rarified Substance. No Element that is pure, and without Mixture, is well adapted for nourishing: Neither can Fish live by pure Water, Respiration, or sucking in those slender Particles of his beloved Element only, without the Concurrence and Assistance of some grosser and terrene Qualities, which are intermingled with those liquid Bodies.

Having mentioned, in my *Introduction*, the great Ravages which Fish are exposed to, as well from their own Kind, as from Birds,
four-

footed Animals, and especially Man ; I shall subjoin to this Chapter a *poetical Enumeration* of their irrational Enemies, which I have since met with in reading Mr. *Browne's Piscatory Eclogues.*

*A Thousand Foes the finny People chase ;
 Nor are they safe from their own kindred Race :
 The Pike, fell Tyrant of the liquid Plain,
 With rav'nous Waste devours his Fellow Train :
 Yet, howsoe'er with raging Famine pin'd,
 The Tench he spares, a salutary Kind.
 Hence too the Perch, a like voracious Brood,
 Forbears to make this gen'rous Race his Food :
 Tho' on the common Drove no Bound he finds,
 But spreads unmeasur'd Waste o'er all the Kinds.
 Nor less the greedy Trout and glutless Eel
 Incessant Woes, and dire Destruction deal.
 The lurking Water-Rat in Caverns preys,
 And in the Weeds the wilely Otter slays :
 The ghastly Newt in muddy Streams annoys,
 And in swift Floods the felly Snake destroys :
 Toads for the swarming Fry forsake the Lawn,
 And croaking Frogs devour the tender Spawn.
 Neither the Habitants of Land nor Air,
 (So sure their Doom) the fishy Numbers spare !
 The Swan, fair Regent of the Silver Tide,
 Their Ranks destroys, and spreads their Ruin
 wide :
 The Duck her Offspring to the River leads,
 And on the destin'd Fry insatiate feeds :
 On fatal Wings the pouncing Bittern soars,
 And wafts her Prey from the defenceless Shores :
 The*

*The watchful Halcyons to the Reeds repair,
 And from their Haunts the scaly Captives bear :
 Sharp Herons and Corm'rants too their Tribes
 oppress,
 A harass'd Race, peculiar in Distress :
 Nor can the Muse enumerate their Foes,
 Such is their Fate, so various are their Woes.*

C H A P. II.

Of the Seasons proper for Angling.

I shall divide my Observations on this Article into *general* and *particular*, beginning with the *first*.

The *Time of the Year* proper for Angling in general, is thus elegantly described by the ingenious Mr. *Henry Needler*.

*The Months o'er which the nearer Sun displays
 His warmer Influence, and directer Rays,
 Are most propitious to the Angler's Toil,
 And crown his Labours with the largest Spoil.
 When Birds begin in brisker Notes to sing,
 And hail with chearful Voice returning Spring ;
 When Western Winds in rapid Breezes fly,
 And brush with downy Wings the brighten'd Sky ;
 When teeming Buds their verd'rous Issue yield,
 And with their tender Offspring grace the Field ;
 Then let the Angler, with industrious Care,
 His guileful Arms and Implements prepare, }
 Break Winter's Truce, and wage the wat'ry }
 War. } But*

*But when Autumnal Blasts have stripp'd the
Wood,*

*And o'er the Ground its yellow Honours strew'd ;
When stormy Boreas re-assumes his Reign,
And with malignant Breath deforms the Plain ;
Let him a while his snary Wiles forbear ;
Till, by the Course of the revolving Year,
The fairer Order of the Months returns,
And Nature with fresh Bloom her Face adorns :
Then soon as Morn has chas'd the Shades of
Sight,*

*And streak'd the purple East with rosy Light ;
Soon as the Lark displays her early Wings,
And to the fragrant Air her Matin sings ;
The Angler, chearful with the Hopes of Prey,
Takes to the reeking Brook his dewy Way.*

In a Word, from the Beginning of *May* till the latter End of *September*, (allowing for the Diversity of Seasons) is the Prime of all the Year for the Diversion we are treating of. And as to the Time of Day, it is from four in the Morning till eight at Night, (when the Days are so long) the worst Part of which is about Noon.

In the particular Directions, I shall first consider which Times *are not*, and then which *are*, the most propitious to the Gentleman Angler.

In great Drougths, when the Rivers are small ; or in the Heat of a clear Day, in *May*, *June*, *July*, *August*, and the Beginning of *September*, though there be no Drought, you will

will find small Sport, especially in marly, chalky, slimy, or very shallow and clear Waters and Rivers.

In cold, frosty, or snowy Weather, it is to little Purpose to angle. When there happeneth in the Spring any small hoary Frost, all that Day after the Fish will not rise kindly, except in the Evening, and that too must prove pleasant.

If the Wind either be Easterly, or so high that you cannot guide your Tools, it is to little purpose to angle. Indeed all sharp, bitter, nipping Winds, but the East especially, blast the Recreation.

After any Sort of Fish have spawned, they never bite to any Purpose, until they have recovered their Strength and former Appetite.

When any Clouds arise, that portend a Shower or Storm, though in the midst of Summer, they will not bite; and even if they bite well before, yet at the Approach of it, they will cease.

When the Nights prove dark, cloudy, or windy, and the Moon shines little, or not at all, next Day there will be little or no Sport, except at small ones: For *Trouts* and great Fish then range about to devour others.

In small, clear, and shallow Brooks, where the Mills stand and keep up the Water, you will neither catch Fish at Ground or Fly: For Fish, especially *Trouts*, dare not then come out of their Hold, by reason of the Shallow-
ness

ness of the Water, and that the Water then brings no Aliment with it.

When People wash their Sheep in Summer, at the Beginning only Fish bite well ; because the Filth draws them together as to a baiting Place : But after they have glutted themselves four or five Days, they will not bite again till washing Time be over.

The following Catalogue of Impediments to the Angler's Recreation, have been given us by a certain Author. 1. The Fault may be occasioned by his Tackle, as when his Lines or Hooks are too large. 2. When his Bait is dead, or decaying. 3. If he angles at a wrong Time of the Day, when the Fish are not in the Humour of taking his Bait. 4. If the Fish have been frightened by the Sight of him, or with his Shadow. 5. If the Waters are thick, red, or white, being disturbed with sudden Floods. 6. If the Weather be too cold. 7. If the Weather be too hot. 8. If it rains much and fast. 9. If it hails or snows. 10. If it be tempestuous. 11. If the Wind blows high. 12. If the Wind be in the East.

But as the principal Rules on this Head are better expressed in the following Verses, than I can possibly express them in Prose, I shall leave them to the Reader's Consideration without enlarging.

*When rising Floods o'ertop the mounding
Shores,
And bear to distant Plains their scaly Stores ;
While oft', from steepy Hills, the Moisture
drains,
By sweeping Torrents wash'd, and trick'ling
Rains ;
O'er the clear Streams a dark'ning Cloud it
spreads,
And drives the Earth-worms from their slimy
Beds :*

*In swarming Shoals resort the finny Brood,
And glut, insatiate, on the fatt'ning Food:
Then vainly waves the Angler's lengthen'd
Cane,
And costly Baits allure the Fry in vain.*

*When parching Droughts the slack'ning
Streams restrain,
The Fish with sick'ning Looks their Food re-
frain,
And seek the Coolness of the Deep in vain.*

*Nor wants the Angler pre-advis'd to know,
When certain Signs disfav'ring Hours fore-show :
Oft-times he views, awarn'd by adverse Skies,
His Fly or gliding Cork with hopeless Eyes,
When the dry East-wind parches up the Plain,
Or the wet South pours down the drenching
Rain.*

*When rotting Weeds the thick'ning Floods
distain,
And to the Deeps retire the finny Train ;*

Seek, Anglers, then, no more th' uncertain Prize;

Ensuing Rains expect, and wintry Skies.

The *best Hours*, in general Esteem, to angle in a clear Day and Water, from about the 10th of *April* until the End of *August*, is from Sun-rise till half an Hour after ten a Clock, and from half an Hour after two a Clock until Sun-set. But if the Day be dark, cloudy, gloomy or lowering, especially if at such a Time also a gentle Breeze blow from any Quarter but the East, you will not fail of catching Fish in any Hour of the Day. But in *March*, the Beginning of *April*, *September*, and all the Winter Months, you may angle all the Day, from about one Hour after Sun-rise until about half an Hour before Sun-set, either in a muddy or clear Water. And you may even angle all the Day in a muddy Water, from the Middle of *April* until the End of *August*, tho' early in the Morning and late in the Evening are best.

When *Trouts* leap out of the Water, and *Pikes* shoot in pursuit of other Fishes, they will bite well, if you angle with Tackle and Baits proper for the Season and Fish.

When a sudden, violent Shower hath a little mudded the Water, if you go forth immediately after such a Shower, and angle at Ground in the Stream or Sides thereof, with *Brandling*, *Gilt-tail*, *Tag-tail*, or chiefly *Red-*

worm well scoured, if there be Store of Fish, you will have Sport to your own Satisfaction.

When Floods have carried away all the Filth that the Rain had washed from the higher Grounds into the River, so that the River keepeth his usual Sounds, and is of a wheyish, chefnut, brown, or ale Colour, it is then good to angle at Ground.

A little before any Fish spawn, they come into the gravelly, sandy Fords, to rub and loosen their Bellies, and then and there they bite well.

When Rives are raised by Rain, and yet within their Banks, Fish seek shelter in the milder Currenst of small Brooks that fall into larger Rivers, and at the Sides or Ends of Bridges, that defend a small Space of Ground from the Impetuousness of the Stream, or in any low Place near the River-side : In such Places you will find Sport.

At the Conflux of Rivers, and where it ebbs and flows, Fish sometimes bite very well, but in the Ebb most usually.

In *February, March*, the Beginning of *April, September*, and all the Winter Months, Fish bite best in the Sun-shiny, warm, and middle Part of the Day, no Wind stirring, and the Air clear : But in the Summer Months, from the 10th of *April* unto the End of *August*, early in the Morning, and in the Evening until Sun-set, and in dark, gloomy Weather.

Fish rise best at the Fly after a Shower that has not mudded the Water, yet has beaten the
Gnats

Gnats and Flies into the River. You may, in such a Shower, observe them to rise much, if you can but endure the Rain.

In calm, clear, and Star-light Nights, especially if the Moon shines, great Fish, *Trouts* especially, are as wary and fearful as in dark, gloomy, and windy Days. But if the next Day prove dark, cloudy, gloomy and windy, and the Water in Order, you may be sure of Sport, if there be Plenty of Fish in the River.

In small, clear Brooks, if you come immediately after a Shower hath raised the Water, or take it just as any Mill Water begins to come down, and so go along with the Course of the Water, Fish, especially *Trouts*, will bite well.

Morning and Evening are best for *Ground-line*, for a *Trout* or other Fish, in clear Weather and Water : But in dark, cloudy Weather, or muddy Water, you may angle at Ground all Day.

Great Fish, as *Trouts* in particular, feed most in the Night, especially if it be dark or windy ; and then bite not the next Day, unless it prove dark or windy, and then a little in the Afternoon only.

The Wind blowing from the South or West, is good to angle in ; the North Wind is but indifferent, and the East Wind very bad.

All Fish bite keener and better, especially in Summer, in swift, rapid, stony, and gravelly

Rivers, than in those that run gently, and glide in Slime and Mud.

Some may expect me to insert the Times most propitious to Anglers, according to the Rules of judicial Astrologers ; but as most People are sufficiently convinced of the Vanity thereof, it would rather be an Unkindness than a Favour, to puzzle our Angler with their ridiculous Notions, as unserviceable to him as false in their Foundations. And as to Prognostics of the Weather, I will only give him the Words of the Poet.

*To flatt'ring Skies no certain Credit lend,
Nor on precarious Signs too much depend.
The Sportsman oft' a ruddy Morning sees,
The Air unclouded, and without a Breeze,
When sudden Winds with heigh't'ning Gusts a-
rise,
And pitchy Clouds enwrap the dark'ning Skies ;
The drizzling Rains descend in ceaseless Show'rs,
And sullen Auster shakes the dripping Bow'rs ;
The Anglers homeward o'er the Meads repass,
And journey cheerless thro' the plashy Grass.
And oft' when Clouds a threat'ning Storm de-
lay,
The gloomy Morning brings a radiant Day.*

But, to conclude the Whole in the Words of
the same ingenious Author,

Hap-

*Happy the Fisher, when in sportive Hours
No Drougths prevent him, nor intemp'rate
Show'rs ;*

*When mildest Zephyrs thro' the Æther fly,
Or South-Winds spread their Fleeces o'er the Sky ;
While varied Sun-shine, and alternate Rains,
Temper the Streams, and verdure all the Plains :
The Fish rise eager at the floating Bait,
Or sink the Cork with their entangled Weight.
But warn th' unpractis'd Angler not to ply
In Shallows then, amid the swarming Fry ;
Lest haply they on the hid Ruin feed,
And of their Tribes prevent the future Breed.*

C H A P. III.

Of the principal Rivers in England, and particularly of the Thames.

TH E Rivers in *England* are said by Dr. *Heylin* to be 325, though others increase their Number to 450. It would be superfluous here to treat particularly of their Diversities, their Situations, their Distance and Remoteness from each other, their Nearness or Vicinity to the Sea, the Qualities of their Water, and the various Species of Fishes they contain. Those that have a more immediate Intercourse with the Ocean, participate of its Influences, and have the same Vicissitudes, the same Fluxes and Reflexes, the same salt Water, and the same Sort of Fish which frequent the Seas where they disembogue themselves.

The Mouths of Rivers are too deep to be fathomed by the Cordage of a Line; but more inland, and farther distant from the common Receptacle of Waters, the Rivers are most proper for the Angler's Diversion.

The principal Rivers in *England* are the *Thames, Severn, Trent, Tine, Tweed, Medway, Tees, Dove, Isis, Tame, Willey, Avon, Lea, Irawel, Lon, Nen, Welland, Derwent, Calder, Wharf, Nid, Don, Swale, Hull, Ouse, and Aye*. The Rivers in *Wales* are reckoned above 200, the principal of which are the *Dee, Wye, Conwy, Tivy, Chedlaydy, Cluid, Usk, Tovy, Taff, and Dovy*.

But as the Maps will give a better Prospect of these than any Enumeration of them can do, let every Angler have a large one of *England*, or at least of the particular County where he usually angles, and therein he may with Delight observe the Spring-head, Site, Distance, various Passages, Windings, Turnings, and Confluxes of each particular River, with what Towns, Castles, Churches, Gentlemen's Houses, and Places of Note are on or near their Banks; making, as he angles, Remarks proper to the Nature of each. I will only say a Word or two of the six principal.

1. The *Thames*, compounded of two Rivers, *Tame* and *Isis*, though the latter of these is called *Thames* before its Conjunction with the former. The *Tame* rises in *Bucks*, somewhat beyond *Tame* in *Oxfordshire*, and the latter in *Cotswold-hills*, near *Cirencester* in *Gloucestershire*.

They

They meet together about *Dorchester* in *Oxfordshire*, and thence run united betwixt that County and *Berks*, and between *Buckinghamshire*, *Middlesex*, and *Effex* on the one Side, and *Surry* and *Kent* on the other, wedding itself to the *Kentish Medway* in the very Jaws of the Ocean. This River is said to feel the Violence and Benefit of the Sea more than any other River in *Europe*, ebbing and flowing twice a Day, more than sixty Miles. About its Banks are so many fine Towns and principal Palaces, that a foreign Poet thus writes of it.

*We saw so many Woods and princely Bowers,
Sweet Fields, gay Palaces, and stately Towers,
So many Gardens drest with curious Care,
That Thames with royal Tyber may compare.*

2. The second River of Note is the *Severn*, which hath its Beginning in *Plinlimmon-Hill* in *Montgomeryshire*, and its End seven Miles from *Bristol*; washing in that Space the Walls of *Shrewsbury*, *Worcester*, *Gloucester*, and divers other Places and Palaces of Note. It receives more great Rivers, and is farther navigable than the *Thames*, but does not equal it for Quantity and Variety of Fish.

3. The *Trent* (so called, say some, for thirty Kind of Fishes that are found in it, or for that it receives thirty lesser Rivers) having its Fountain in *Staffordshire*, and gliding through the Counties of *Nottingham*, *Lincoln*, *Leicester*, and *York*, augments the turbulent Current of the *Humber*, the most violent Stream of all the

Ise. This *Humber* indeed is not a distinct River, having a Spring-head of its own, but rather the Mouth or *Æstuarium* of divers Rivers here meeting together; among which, besides the *Trent*, are the *Darwent*, and *Ouse*.

4. The *Medway*, a *Kentish* River, falling into the Sea together with the *Thames*, and famous for harbouring the Royal Navy.

5. The *Tweed*, the North-East Bound of *England*, on whose Banks is seated the strong and almost impregnable Town of *Berwick*.

6. The *Tine*, famous for *Newcastle*, and her inexhaustible Coal-pits. These, and the rest of principal Note, are thus comprehended in one of Mr. *Drayton's* Sonnets.

*The Floods Queen, Thames, for Ships and Swans
is crown'd,*

*And stately Severn for her Shore is prais'd ;
The Chrystal Trent for Fords and Fish renown'd,
And Avon's Fame to Albion's Cliffs is rais'd:
Carlegion Chester vaunts her holy Dee ;*

*York many Wonders of her Ouse can tell :
The Peak her Dove, whose Banks so fertile be,
And Kent will say her Medway doth excel.
Cotswold commends her Isis to the Tame ;*

*Our Northern Borders boast of Tweed's fair
Flood ;*

*Our Western Parts extol their Willy's Fame,
And the old Lea brags of the Danish Blood.*

But I return again to the *Thames*, of which, and the Rivers that fall into it, I shall treat some-

somewhat more particularly, as they are more the Seat of this Diversion of Angling than any others. And here I must own myself obliged to the experienced Author of a Treatise concerning *Thames-Fishing*.

The higher any Man goes up the *Thames*, if within about forty Miles, the more Sport, and the greater Variety of Fish he will meet with : But as few *Londoners* go so far from Home, I shall first mention the best Places for *Thames* Angling from *London-Bridge* to *Chelsea*.

It will be to no Manner of Purpose to angle in the *Thames*, if the Air be cold and raw, the Wind high, the Water rough, or if it be wet Weather : But when the Sky is serene, the Air temperate, and the Water smooth, you need not doubt of meeting with good Sport. The proper Hours for Angling, are from the Time that the Tide is half ebb'd, to within two Hours of High-water, provided that the Land-floods do not come down. Always pitch your Boat under the Wind ; that is, if the Wind be at South, then keep on the *Surry* Shore ; if at North, then on the *London* Side.

The best Places for pitching a Boat to angle in the *Thames*, are about one hundred and fifty Yards from *York-Stairs*, the *Savoy*, *Somerset-Garden-Wall*, *Dorset-Stairs*, *Black-Friars-Stairs*, the *Dung-Wharf* near *Water-Lane*, *Trig-Stairs* and *Essex-Stairs*. On *Surry* Side, the *Falcon-Stairs* ; *Barge-Houses* ; *Cuper's*, vulgarly called *Cupid's-Stairs* ; the *Wind-Mill*, and *Lambeth*. When you go to angle at
Chelsea.

Chelsea, on a calm fair Day, the Wind being in a right Corner, pitch your Boat almost opposite to the Church, and angle in six or seven Foot Water, where you will meet with Plenty of *Roach*.

Mortlack-Deeps is the next Place where *Roach* principally resort when the Weeds are rotten; and here are good *Carp* very often. And from the Sides of the *Eights*, opposite to *Brentford*, *Isleworth*, and *Twickenham*, there is very good Angling for *Roach*, *Dace*, *Gudgeon*, and *Perch*. Very often you will meet with *Trout*, and sometimes with *Carp*. *Teddington-Banks* are remarkable for Plenty of good *Gudgeon*; *Kingston-wick* and *Kingston* for *Barbel*, *Roach*, and *Dace*. At *Sunbury*, there is good Angling for *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Gudgeons*; and from the *Eights*, for *Trout* and large *Perch*. *Shepperton-Pool* abounds with large *Barbel* and *Dace*. At and about *Windsor* is vast Variety of all Sorts of Fish; but if a Man be found angling in another's Water, he is fined very high by the Court of that Town, even though he catches but a single *Gudgeon*, *Roach*, or *Dace*.

Of the Rivers that empty themselves into the *Thames*, and of others which are not far from it, I begin with those on the North-Side.

1. *Ilford-River*, the upper Part of which abounds with *Roach* and *Dace*, and some *Perch*; but between *Ilford* and the *Thames*, especially about three Miles from the Town, there is *Pike*.
2. *Woodford-River*, having Plenty of *Perch*,

Perch, Chub, Roach, and Dace. 3. *Stratford River*, which gives the Angler good Diversion for *Roach, Dace, Chub, Perch, and Eels.* 4. *Bow-River*, much of the Nature with *Stratford-River*, and stored with the same Sort of Fish. 5. *Hackney-River*, having Plenty of large *Barbel* and *Chub, Roach, Dace, Gudgeon, Eels, and Lampreys.* Its Fish are as good as any other River can yield, if not better; particularly the *Barbels, Eels, and Gudgeons.* 6. *Waltham River*, besides large *Barbel* and *Chub, Roach, Dace, Gudgeon, and Eels,* has good Store of fine *Pike,* and some *Carp.* 7. The *New-River*, well stored with *Roach, Dace, Chub, small Gudgeons, and Eels.* 8. *Brentford-River*, a good River formerly, but much abused by Poachers. Here are some *Roach, Dace, and Chub.* 9. *Hounslow-River*, which lies so very open, that the Fish, which are *Roach, Dace, Perch, Pike, and Gudgeon,* are aware of the Angler, and shoot away before he can lay in his Line. 10. *Cole-River*, abounding with *Chub, Roach, and Dace,* above the Town of *Colnbrook*: And between that Town and the *Thames* are Plenty of large *Perch*; but they are very quick-fighted, and shy. 11. *Uxbridge-River*, excellent for its large and fat *Trouts*; but the Water being leased out to many who have a Property in it, it is a difficult Matter to angle there, and not be discovered. If you go into any one of the Proprietor's Grounds to angle, even by Consent, you are generally attended by one who keeps

keeps an Account how many Brace of *Trouts* you take, for which you must pay certain large Prices.

On the South Side of the *Thames*, are, 1. *Deptford-River*, very much decayed, and having but few Fish in it, such as *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Flounders*; and by Chance, you may meet with a *Trout*. 2. *Lewisbam-River*, in which are some good *Trouts*, large *Roach*, and *Chub*, *Gudgeons*, and some *Perch*, and small *Dace*. 3. *Wandsworth-River*, having many large *Gudgeons* and *Dace*, *Flounders*, *Perch*, *Pike*, some *Carp*, and *Trouts*; and very large *Silver Eels* are often taken here. 4. *Martin-River*, whose principal Fish are *Trouts*. 5. *Mitcham-River*, for *Trouts* also. 6. *Carshalton-River*, abounding with *Trouts*, and other white Fish. 7. *Moulsey-River*, yielding *Perch*, *Jack*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Chub*, *Gudgeon*, some *Flounders*, and a few *Trouts*, besides *Barbel*. 8. *Esber-River*, good for *Jacks*, *Perch*, *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Gudgeon*, *Eels*, *Flounders*, *Barbels*, and *Trouts*. 9. *Cobham-River*, having Plenty of good *Trouts*, fat and large; as also *Dace*, *Perch*, *Chubs*, *Jacks*, and *Gudgeons*. 10. *Weybridge-River*, yielding good *Diverfion* for *Carp*, some of which weigh eight or nine Pounds; *Jack*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Flounders*, *Popes*, large *Bleak*, *Barbel*, and *Gudgeon*. 11. *Byfleet River*, where you have very large *Pikes* and *Jacks*, *Tench*, *Perch* of eighteen Inches in Length, good *Carp*, large *Flounders*, *Bream*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Gudgeon* in Plenty, *Popes*, large

large *Chub*, and *Eels*. 12. *The New-River*, in which are vast Quantities of excellent *Gudgeon*, and a few *Jacks*, or young *Pike*, *Dace*, and some *Roach*.

I cannot better conclude this Account of the *Tbames*, and the principal Rivers that fall into and compose it, than by the following beautiful Lines of Mr. *Pope*, in which the largest of those Rivers are enumerated by their proper Appellations.

*First the fam'd Authors of his antient Name,
The winding Isis and the fruitful Tame:
The Kennet swift, for silver Eels renown'd;
The Loddon slow, with verdant Alders crown'd:
Cole, whose clear Streams his flow'ry Islands lave,
And chalky Wey, that rolls a milky Wave:
The blue, transparent Vandalis appears;
The gulphy Lee his sedgy Tresses rears;
And sullen Mole, that hides his diving Flood;
And silent Darent, stain'd with Danish Blood.*

C H A P. IV.

Of the various Methods of Angling.

TH O' all Sorts of Fish will sometimes take Baits at the Ground, yet all will not take the Fly at the Top of the Water. But the *Running-line*, or *Angling by Hand*, without any Float, and only one or two small Plummetts of Lead, is the most proper Way to angle for a *Trout* with Worms, either in a muddy or clear Water at Ground.

In

In a muddy Water, or one discoloured by Rain, the *Running-line* should be half the Length of the Rod, more or less, and the two lowermost Links of three Hairs a-piece. Next should be a Link of four Hairs, with a Loop or Water-noose, to fasten it to another of the same Number, having likewise a Water-noose at its Bottom. Then proceed with Links of five or six Hairs a-piece, to the End. The three lowermost Links, or Gildards, should be of a sorrel, brown, or chestnut Colour. Your Cane or Reed-rod must have a Top neither too stiff, nor too slender: The Rod to be about three Yards and a half long, and the Top about one Yard and a half, or two Yards of Hazle, either in one or two Pieces, and five or six Inches of Whale-bone, made round, smooth and taper. All this will make the Rod five Yards and a half long, or five Yards at least.

The Line should have more Lead in a great, troublesome, rough River, than in one that is smaller and more quiet: As near as may be, always just so much as will sink the Bait to the Bottom, and permit its Motion, without any violent Jogging on the Ground. Carry the Top of your Rod even with your Hand, beginning at the Head of the Stream, and letting the Bait run downwards as far as the Rod and Line will permit, the Lead dragging and rolling on the Ground. No more of the Line must be in the Water, than will permit the Lead to touch the Bottom; for you are to
keep

keep the Line as strait as possible, yet so as not to raise the Lead from the Bottom. When you have a Bite, you may perceive it by your Hand and the Point of your Rod and Line: Then strike gently, and strait upwards; first allowing the Fish, by a little slackening the Line, a small Time to take in the Bait. In a clear Water indeed, it has been found best to strike at the first Biting of the Fish, when you angle for *Trouts*, *Graylings*, or *Salmon-smelts*.

Your Bait may be a *Red-worm* well scoured; but a *Brandling*, *Meadow-worm*, or *Tag-tail* is still better; or, which is best of all, both a *Brandling* and a *Gilt-tail*, or two *Worms* of the same Sort, at the same Time, in the Manner as is hereafter directed. Observe often to renew your Bait: But tho' when you angle for *Trouts*, with any *Worms* except the *Dew-worm*, they take the Bait dragging on the Ground, either in a muddy or clear Water; yet a *Grayling* loves it nine or twelve Inches from the Bottom.

If you angle for a *Trout* with a well-scoured *Dew-worm*, in a muddy Water, put the Hook in him towards the Tail, somewhat above the Middle, and out again a little below towards the Head: Then draw him over the arming of the Hook, which ought to be large, and put the Point again into his Head, till it come near the Place where the Point of the Hook first came out: Then draw back that
which

which was above the Arming of the Hook, and so proceed with your Sport.

But if you angle in a muddy Water for *Trouts* of the usual Size, from eight to twelve Inches long, then is the Time to have two *Brandlings*, or two *Meadow-worms*, or a *Brandling* and *Gilt-tail* on the Hook at once, which you are to bait thus: Run the Point of the Hook in at the very Head of the first, which when you have two Sorts should be the *Brandling*, and so down through his Body, till it be past the Knot, or about the Middle of the Worm: Then push it out, and thrust the Worm above the Whipping or Arming, that you may not bruise it with your Fingers, till you have put on the other, by running the Point of the Hook in below the Knot or Middle, and upwards through his Body, till it be just covered with the Head: This being done, slip the first *Worm* down over the Whipping again, till the Knots or Middles of both meet together. Any two *Worms* may be thus baited.

But if you angle with one *Worm* only, which is the most proper Way for a *Trout*, *Salmon-smelt*, or *Grayling*, in a clear Water at Running-line, put the Point of the Hook in at the very Tag of his Tail, and run it up his Body quite over all the Whipping, and almost an Inch upon the Line. Many Anglers let the Head hang downwards, and leave the Point of the Hook bare; but others cover the Point with the *Worm's* Head, nipping off just the
Tip-

Tip-end of it. When you angle with the *Worm's Head* hanging down, and the Point of the Hook bare, strike immediately upon the first Bite of a *Trout*, or *Salmon-smelt*.

When you bait thus with only one *Brandling*, *Gilt-tail*, or *Meadow-worm* on the Hook at a Time, your Hook should be small, and your Line have two or three of the lowermost Links of one Hair a-piece, and then one or two Links of two Hairs a-piece, and so proceed with three and four to the topmost Link. The Hair should be of a duskyish white or grey Colour; the Line generally about two Yards shorter than the Rod, and leaded with a small blackish Plummet or Shot. Thus tackled and baited, always prefer a clear before a muddy Water, and angle up the Stream, still casting out the Worm before you, with a light one-handed Rod, made of *Hazle*, *Yew*, and *Whalebone*, and at least five Yards and a half long. Sometimes the Bait will be taken at the Top, or within a very little of the Superficies of the Water, and commonly before the light Plumb can sink it to the Bottom, which will not be immediately by reason of the Stream, and that you must always keep your Hand and Worm in Motion, tho' very slowly, by drawing the Bait still back towards you, as if you were angling with a Fly. The Rod must be light, pliant, long, and not top-heavy, true and finely made; and this is the best Way of angling.

ling for *Trout*, *Grayling*, and *Salmon-smelts* with Worms, in a clear Water especially. If your Constitution would endure to let you wade to the Calf of your Leg or Knee, into the Tail of a shallow clear Stream, and so keep off the Bank, you may almost take what *Trouts*, *Graylings*, or *Salmon-smelts* you can desire, in a Place where they abound. However, some had rather use this fine Tackle when they angle for *Graylings* only, with *Worms*, *Cod-bait*, *Ash-grub*, or *Dock-worm*, and a Float of Cork; because they take their Baits best 6, 9, or 12 Inches from the Bottom.

The Manner of Angling in very clear Rivers, by reason of their exceeding Brightness, is very different from that commonly used in others not so transparent; these latter admitting of stronger Tackle, and a nearer Approach to the Stream; nor are they so difficult for Novices as the more rarified Rivers, which require an able and judicious Artist, and very fine Tackle. However, upon the whole, Angling with a Worm and a single Hair, for two Links next the Hooks, in a clear Water, for *Trouts*, *Graylings*, and *Salmon-smelts*, on frequent Experience has been found so advantageous, that it is generally substituted instead of the *artificial Fly*, especially from the Rising of the Sun till eight o'Clock.

The Line for *Float-Angling* in a River should be longer than the Rod two or three Foot, but shorter than the Rod in Pits, Ponds, and

and Meres. For *Trouts*, *Graylings*, or *Salmon-smelts*, in a clear Water, but one Hair next the Hook, and such a Rod and Line as directed for a *Trout* with the Running-Line in a clear Water, is always best : But for most other Fish, and in a muddy Water, with three Hairs next the Hook, and proportionably strong upwards ; with large Pellet-Shot, or small Bullets, for the Plumb.

In general, the Bait must be suited to the Fish you angle for ; your Plumbs fitted to the Cork or Float ; your Cork to the Condition of the River you angle in, that is, to the Swiftnes or Slownes of it : According to the Directions given in the several Articles of particular Fish, Plumbs, and Floats. You must cast the Bait up the River, and let it run downwards as far as the Rod and Line will suffer. In a clear Water, when you use *Worms*, bait with but one *Worm* only. In a muddy or discoloured Water, bait with two *Worms* at a Time.

And as in clear Water, the Colour of your Line must be a duskyish white or grey Colour ; so in Water that is discoloured, your Line for two Yards next the Hook ought to be of a sorrel, brown, or Chesnut, and the upper Part of it white.

This Way you may angle for most sorts of Fish, letting the Bait drag on the Ground for the *Trout*, *Gudgeon*, *Bream*, *Barbel*, *Flounder*, and *Salmon* ; for *Grayling* and *Perch* keeping it six or nine Inches from the Bottom ; and for

Pike,

Pike, Ruff, Carp, Tench, Roach, and Bleak, about Mid Water, sometimes lower and sometimes higher. The *Chub* is often taken with the Bait on the Bottom, sometimes at Mid Water in hot Weather, and sometimes at the Top. The *Dace* takes all Ground-Baits at Bottom; and some let the Bait touch the Ground when they angle for *Perch, Tench, and Roach* in Rivers, tho' this Way is more generally disapproved. In Ponds, for *Roach* and *Tench*, angle always about two Foot within Water. Those who angle for a *Trout* with a Float, keep the Bait as near the Bottom as they can, without dragging; which is difficult, if not impossible, to be always observed, by Reason of the Declivity of the Bottom, and Unevenness thereof in most Places: And the daily Experiment of the Running-line, shews that to be a very effectual Way for a *Trout*. The *Eel* is never to be angled for with a Float, but always with a Ledger-bait, Snigling, Brogling, or Bobbing.

You may use all Sorts of Baits when you angle with a Float, but Ground-baits and Pastes are most common, and sometimes Flies for *Roach* within the Water, particularly the *Ant-Fly*. Let your Lead neither be so heavy as to sink the Cork or Float, nor so light as not with the smallest Touch to make it dip under Water; the infallible Signal of a Bite, unless the Bait stick, or the Line be entangled on Wood, Stones, or Weeds.

To *angle at Top with a Worm*, you must use a Line longer than the Rod, and a *Brandling* or *Gilt-tail Worm*. Your Line should be without Float or Lead. You must draw your Bait up and down the Stream, at Top of the Water, as you do a *Cod-bait* for *Trout*. In a clear Water and Day, perhaps you may take more *Trouts* and *Salmon-smelts* this Way than any other.

In order to *lay Night Hooks*, procure a small Cord sixteen Yards long, and at equal Distances tie to it five or six *Hempen Lines*, of the Thickness of the *Trowling-line*, about eighteen Inches long a-piece, fastening them in such a Manner as you may easily remove or put them to again. To each of these whip a Hook, and bait it with a *Minnow*, *Loach*, or *Bull-head*, his Gill-Fins cut off; or, for want of them, with a small *Gudgeon*, a small *Roach*, a *Seven Eyes*, or one of the small Brood of *Eels*; or with *Beef*, or the Pith and Marrow in an *Ox* or *Cow's Back-bone*. If you bait with any Fish, put the Point of the Hook in at the Tail and out at the Mouth, the Head of the Fish resting on the Hook's Bent; and cover the Point of the Hook with a small *Worm*: Then to one End of the Cord fasten a Stone, or a Lead Weight of about two Pounds, and throw it cross the River in some still Deep, or at the Tail or Side of a deep Stream. Fasten the other End to some Bough or Stick on the Water-bank you stand on; and in the Morning you will seldom fail to find Fish ensnared

snared. Use a great Fish Needle to draw the Line thro' the Bait, and out at its Tail, and then let it slip down to the Hook's Bent, the Head being downwards, tying the Tail to the Line with Thread, and the Top of the Hemp Line to the Cord.

Eels, Chubs, large Trouts, and Pike, are taken this Way : But if you lay for *Pike*, keep the Bait with a Float about a Foot from the Bottom. For other Fish let it touch the Bottom. Your great *Lobworm* is as good a Bait as any for Night-Hooks; only if you lay them in Rivers, perhaps the small Fish may pull your Bait off, and miss being taken. Therefore *Minnows, Loaches, Bull-heads, small Gudgeons, Bleaks, small Roaches, small Daces, Seven-Eyes, &c.* are the most certain to succeed.

Having omitted the *Artificial Minnow* in speaking of Baits, I will here add Mr. *Walton's* Directions for making it, who says it will catch a *Trout* as well as an *artificial Fly*, and takes care to inform us, that he had one made by a handsome Woman, who had a fine Hand, and a live Minnow lying by her. The Mould or Body was Cloth, and wrought over with a Needle; the Back with very dark green Silk, and a paler green Silk towards the Belly, shadowed as perfectly as a natural Minnow. The Belly was wrought a Part of it with white Silk, and another Part with Silver Thread: The Tail and Fins were of a Quill, which was shaved thin: The Eyes were two little black Beads, and the Head was

was so shadowed, and all of it so exactly imitated, that it would beguile any sharp-sighted *Trout* in a swift Stream. Others have an *artificial Minnow* made of Tin, which may be bought at the Tackle-Shops. They are used for *Perch* as well as *Trout*.

When you *angle at Ground* for small Fish, as *Gudgeons*; or at *Mid-water* for *Roach* and *Bleak*; put two or three Hooks on your Line, the one about eight or nine Inches lower than the other: Which you may do, by having two or three Gildards, that is Links arm'd, or whipped with Hooks, and tied at the lowermost Water-Knot. Thus you may put on two or three different Baits, and you will try with more Ease and less Time which is best taken; and often catch two or three Fish at once. You may also have one Bait for such as feed close upon the Ground, as the *Gudgeon*. And another for such as feed a little higher, as *Roach* and *Dace*. But if your Bait be to run on the Ground, you must have a fair sandy Bottom, free from Wood, Stones, and Weeds: Your Lead is always to be on the lowermost Link. This is the *Pater-noster* Line.

Give all Fish Time to take and swallow the Bait, especially *Pike*, *Perch*, *Gudgeon*, and, in a muddy Water, *Trout*, being not over-hasty, unless you angle with such tender Baits as will not endure nibbling at, as *Pastes*, *Sheep's-Blood*, *Flies*, &c. which are taken away at the first Pull of the Fish, and therefore at first Pull oblige you to try your Fortune. The

Roach generally nibbles at the Bait, and does not bite surely; but if he does bite surely, it is commonly a very good one: Therefore strike at the first Touch when you angle for him.

It is common, especially when the Angler is tired, to *angle* with a *Ledger-bait*, that is, a Bait always fixed in one certain Place; which is so called in opposition to other Baits, that are always in Motion, and thence called *Walking-baits*. The Manner of the *Ledger-bait* is thus.

Take off your Cork from your Float Line, it being leaded as usual; and within half a Yard of the Top of the Line, wrap about it a thin Plate of Lead, one Inch broad, and an Inch and a half long: Then fix your Line to the Rod, and bait your Hook, and cast it into a very gentle Stream, or still Water, and there let it sink, and rest on the Bottom. Either firmly hold the Rod, or stick the thick End thereof in the River's Bank, and as you stand or sit by it, you will perceive, by the Motion of the Lead on your Line's Top, when you have a Bite. This Way you may angle for all Sorts of Fish whatsoever, especially the *Chub* and *Eel*. Let *Ledger-baits* for the *Pike* be always kept, at least, a Foot from the Bottom, by the Help of a Float.

Angling with the *natural Fly* is called *Dibbing*, *Dabbing*, or *Dibbling*. It is usually performed upon the very Surface of the Water, but sometimes by permit-
ting

ting the Bait to sink two or three Inches, especially when you join a *Cod-bait*, or *Clap-bait*, with the *Oak-fly*, for *Trout* or *Chub*.

You may dib with any Sort of *natural Fly*; but principally for a *Trout* with a *Green-drake* and *Stone-fly*, or with the *Oak-fly* and *Cod-bait*, or with *Fern-fly*, for about ten Days in *May*: But the *Fern-fly* is good for the *Chub* all the Summer, *Cankers*, *Palmers*, *Caterpillars*, *Grasshoppers*, their Legs and outermost Wings taken off, *Oak-worm* and *Hawthorn-worm*, or *Grub*, are also good. Some often pull off the uppermost Wings of the *Fern-fly*, when they use it in *dibbing* for a *Trout*. You may likewise *dib* with the *Water-cricket*, or *Creeper*, in the Month of *April*.

The *Salmon*, *Trout*, *Grayling*, *Bleak*, *Chub*, *Roach*, and *Dace*, are the only Fish that will take Flies. The four first take the *natural Fly* no better than the *Dub-fly*, except in very hot calm Weather, or in the Evening of a hot Day, at which Times it is most proper to *dib*. The rest take *natural Flies*, either at top, or under, or within the Water; and sometimes a *Dub-fly*, especially if a *Cod-bait*, *Oak-worm*, *Clap-bait* or *Gentle* be joined with it. The *Dace* takes Flies best at top of the Water, or within an Inch thereof; but the *Roach* takes them best a Foot within the Water, or more deep sometimes.

Dibbing for *Trout* or *Grayling* is performed with a Line about half the Length of the Rod, if the Air be still, or with one almost as long

as the Rod, if there be a Wind to carry it from you. There should be four Hairs next the Hook for *Trouts*, but five or six for the *Chub*. Let the Fly play on the very Top of the Water before you, up and down the River, as the Wind serves; and angle as near as you can to the Bank of the same Side whereon you stand: Though when you see a Fish rise within Reach, you may guide your Fly quick over him, whether in the Middle or on the contrary Side; and if you are pretty well out of Sight, either by kneeling, or the Interposition of a Bank or Bush, you may almost be sure to take him, if it be presently done. The Fish will otherwise, perhaps, be removed to another Place, if it be in the still Deeps, where he is always in Motion, and roving up and down for Prey; though in a Stream you may almost always, especially if there be a good Stone near, find him in the same Place. Above an Inch of the Line ought not to touch the Water in *dibbing*; therefore you may be the stronger tackled. For in this Kind of Angling you are to expect the largest Fish; and wanting Length to give him Line after he is struck, you must be forced to tug for it.

Some highly commend a *Dibbing-Line* made of white Virginal Wire, the Brittleness or Stiffness of it being first allayed and tempered, by laying it upon clear hot Coals, for some small Time, which will cause the Metal to be more tough.

When

When you have got the *Green-drake* and *Stone-fly*, which are two of the Species of *May-flies*, take one of them, and put the Point of the Hook into the thickest Part of his Body, under one of his Wings; run it directly through, and out at the other Side, leaving him spitted cross on the Hook: Then taking the other, put him on after the same Manner, but with his Head the contrary Way, in which Posture they will live, and play with their Wings a Quarter of an Hour, if you but let them touch the Superficies of the Water. But if you dib with an *Oak-fly* and a *Cod-bait*, put the *Oak-fly* on length-ways in under his Head, and out at his Tail, and a *Cod-bait* on the Point of the Hook, and let them sink a little into the Water. You may bait any other two Flies after the same Manner. If Fish will not bite very well, take your natural *Stone-fly* at Dabbing, pull away his Wings, and angle with him within the Water, as you sometimes angle with a *Cod-bait*, and *Trouts*, *Salmon-smelts*, &c. will eagerly take it.

You must always dib in a clear Water, and on the Surface thereof, and you are neither to have Lead nor Float on the Line. A hot, calm Day, or the Evening of a hot Day, is the most proper Time, and in still Deeps, but sometimes in Streams or Sides of them, especially when the Water is clearing after a Flood. You may dib with the *Green-drake* both in Streams and Stills, all Hours of the Day: But the *Stone-fly* it most proper for the Streams

only, and that early and late. Yet if there be a whistling Wind in the Evening, dib in the still Steeps with an artificial *Stone-fly*, where and when it will murder the best Fish. Sometimes you may pull off the Wings of the *Stone-fly*, and angle with it within Water.

When you bait any Sort of Fly, let your Fingers be dry: And in using it, keep out of Sight, if possible: For to fish fine and far off, is the great Rule in all Manner of Fly-angling.

To conclude, how delightful is every Species of this Diversion, in such a Paradise as the Poet describes!

*Behind, where Alders from the Weather
screen,*

*Before, the Lawn presents its lengthen'd Scene:
Close on that Side trills soft the emptying Brook,
While this fresh Woods and sloping Hills o'er-
look:*

*Thick over-head the Rose and Woodbine meet,
Uniting Shade to Shade, and Sweet to Sweet:
The Pea and bloomy Bean their Odours yield,
And new-mown Hay perfumes the fragrant
Field.*

*To hear the Nightingale delights the Meads,
And Grasshoppers chirp shrill amid the Reeds;
While from the Pinfold, there, the blating Sheep
Chear the still Twilight, and divert from Sleep:
The Gale's Perfume, the Echo's mimic Sound,
The Nightbird's Song, and Low of Kine around:
In hollow Banks the Hum of must'ring Bees,
And Zephyrs whisp'ring soft amid the Trees.*

C H A P. V.

Of Rock and Sea-Fishing.

I Before observed, that when I speak of Rock or Sea-fishing, I only extract what others have written, having never practised that Diversion myself.

Rock-fishing is to be followed only during the Summer Season, and is chiefly practised in the South and South-west Parts of *England*, and in some Places in *Ireland*. In this last-mentioned Country, the Rocks of *Dunlery*, which are eight or ten Miles in Length, and the nearest Part about five Miles Eastward of *Dublin*, are remarkable for this Way of Fishing.

In fresh Water Rivers you are obliged to angle with a very fine Line ; but in Rock-fishing your Line ought to have at least five or six Hairs in every Link. A Float is necessary, and two Hooks ; one to reach the Bottom, and the other to keep in Mid-water. The best Time to follow this Sport, is when the Tide is half spent, and to be continued till within two Hours of high Water. The Morning and Evening are the most propitious Parts of the Day, provided that the Tide then favour your Design.

The Baits which are used generally in Rock-fishing, are the *Cockle*, the *Lob*, and the *Marsh-worm*. But there is another Sort, called the *Hairy-worm*, which is preferable to

all the rest. *Hairy-worms*, if full grown, are near four Inches long, flat and broad, and resemble an Earwig. They are found on the Sea-shore, when the salt Water has left it, and to be dug out with a Spade, as you would dig for *Earth-worms*. When you have washed them from their Filth and Dirt in salt Water, they will appear to be of a fine, pale, flesh Colour. They are to be placed upon the Hook with their Heads foremost, leaving about an Inch to play in the Water,

The Angler must not be surprized if in Rock-fishing he sometimes finds his Hook to be fastened under Water. If he cannot get it loose in two or three Offers, he has nothing to do but to wait with Patience, or take off his Line from the Rod, and make fast the Top of it, that it may not be drawn into the Water. It often will be loosened in half a Quarter of an Hour, and sometimes not till the Tide ebbs almost as low as the Place where it is fastened. This Accident is occasioned by an ill-favoured little Fish, called a *Cobler*, or *Miller's Thumb*, which, as soon as he has sucked in the Bait, retires into the Cleft of the Rock, and turning him about, renders it impossible to disengage him, till he has a mind to come out himself, or till the sinking of the Water compels him to it. As there is but little Meat upon this Fish, and that too is reckoned unwholsome, his Fate, for the Trick he plays, generally is, to have a small Stick thrust

thrust through his Eys, and then to be cast into the Sea, where he swims till he dies.

The Rock-fisher ought to have a strong Rod jointed, which he may shorten upon occasion, or keep it at its full Length, the better to command his Line. And the Line must be strong, the better to endure pulling, when it shall happen to be fastened to the Sea-weeds.

He must also be provided with a sufficient Stock of every Thing that is requisite, as Silk, Hooks, Lines, Wax, &c. lest by Mischance he may happen to break a Line or Hook. Nor must the *Landing-net* and *Landing-hook* be forgotten, which are absolutely necessary when the Tide is low, or when you stand upon a Rock too high above the Water.

They who divert themselves with catching *Crabs*, should bait their Hooks with *Chicken-guts*, or with the Guts of Fish; and when they bring a *Crab* near the Surface of the Water, have their *Landing-net* ready, or weigh him on Shore with all the Expedition imaginable.

The Manner of Sea-fishing, as used by Gentlemen for Recreation, is either in a Boat or a Ship. When in a Boat, or Wherry, they seldom catch any other than *Whiting* and *Haddock*, and the former of these most frequently.

In order to divert yourself with this Kind of Fishing, you must first find the Place where *Whitings* resort, by observing diligently the *Sea Gulls*; for where they hover, especially when they fly down, and seem to dip

tem-

themselves in the Water, you may conclude that a Scale of *Whitings* are there. In this Place you must cast anchor, and prepare your Fish-tackle. You will not have occasion to use a Rod, which is here altogether useless. Fasten one End of your *Pater-noster-line* to the Inside of the Boat, with half a Dozen Hooks, each half a Yard distant from the other; and having baited them with *Hairy-worms*, if you can get them, (if not, with the *Lob* or the *Marsh-worms*,) cast it into the Sea. You need not wait long before you draw it up; neither have you any Occasion to hold it in your Hand, to know when the Fish bite: For as *Whitings* are a very greedy Fish, they will quickly gorge the Bait, and by that Means make themselves fast to your Hooks.

When you fish for *Haddocks*, your Line must be deep in the Water, and your Hook baited with two or three *Lob-worms*: Your Tackle must be strong; for they struggle hard, especially if they have arrived to a tolerable Growth.

As to the other Part of *Sea-fishing*, namely in a Ship under sail, your Line ought to be sixty Fathom in Length, having a large Hook affixed to it, and a Piece of Lead sufficient to keep it as deep under Water as possible. Your Line must be made of Hemp, and fastened to the Gamel of the Ship.

Cod, *Mackerel*, and large *Haddock*, are the Fish usually taken this Way, and sometimes

Ling :

Ling: The Bait for them, except for the *Mackerel*, is a Piece of *raw Beef*; and it is scarce possible to feel either of them bite, even tho' you hold the Line in your Hand, by Reason of the continual Motion of the Ship.

It is in vain to fish for *Mackerel*, except when the Ship lies by, or is becalmed. A Piece of scarlet Cloth hung upon a Hook, is the first Bait that is used, which never fails of answering the Intent it was designed for. And when you have taken a *Mackerel*, cut a thin Piece off from the Tail, a little above the Fin, and place it upon your Hook, and you need not fear taking many of them. Thus one or two will serve for Baits, till you are tired with the Sport. One *Mackerel*, if dressed as soon as it is taken, will be preferable to a Dozen that are brought to Shore.

Some Gentlemen and Ladies, who live near the Sea-side, divert themselves, during the Summer Season, in catching *Sbrimps* and *Prawns*. For this, the Time of the Tide must be punctually observed, and the Person ready to go upon the Rocks as soon as the Water begins to leave them. A Net must be provided in the Shape of a Cabbage-net, but deeper, and the Meshes smaller: This is to be fastened to a Bow with a Handle, the same in Shape and Size with a Tennis-ball Racket. Observe the Hollows between the Rocks, and especially those in which there are many Seaweeds, for under them the *Sbrimps* and *Prawns* take shelter. And all that you have to do, is,

to thrust your Net close to the Side of the Rock, under a Part of those Weeds ; and then take it up, and turn out what you have taken into a Pail or little Tub.

I conclude this *Treatise of Angling* with turning the *Reader's* Meditation into the same Channel to which I first directed it ; the Providence of *Him*, at whose Command, for the Use and Advantage of *Mankind*,

*Forthwith the Sounds and Seas, each Creek
and Bay,*

*With Fry innumerable swarm, and Shoals
Of Fish, that with their Fins and shining Scales
Glide under the green Wave, in Sculls that oft'
Bank the Mid-sea. Part single, or with Mate
Graze the Sea-weed, their Pasture, and thro'
Groves*

*Of Coral stray ; or sporting with quick Glance,
Shew to the Sun their wav'd Coats dropp'd with
Gold :*

*Or, in their pearly Shells, at Ease attend
Moist Nutriment ; or under Rocks their Food
In jointed Armour watch. On smooth the Seal
And bended Dolphins play : Part, huge of Bulk,
Wall'wing, unwieldy, enormous in their Gait,
Tempest the Ocean : There Leviathan,
Hugest of living Creatures, on the Deep,
Stretch'd like a Promontory, sleeps or swims
And seems a moving Lake ; and at his Gills
Draws in, and at his Trunk spouts out a Sea.*

MILTON.

End of the THIRD PART.

A P-



APPENDIX.

DISCOURSE I.

Of Fish-Ponds.



Every Gentleman who can afford to make himself a *Fish-Pond*, will, it is presumed, have the Work done, or at least over-looked, by Persons skilful in such Operations, I shall take no notice of that mechanical Part, which could be of little Service here. But the following Extracts, from Writers who have treated philosophically of this Matter, will doubtless be useful and entertaining.

It has been observed, that every Kind of Fish requires a certain Depth of Water to maintain itself in; the smaller Sorts delighting and thriving in shallower Waters than the greater; and these Waters are more or less nourishing to some Fish, as they pass through
different

different *Strata*, or Beds of Earth, every Kind of Earth giving its Tincture to the Waters passing through it, or joining with it. The most nourishing Waters for *Carp*, are such as are found in Heathy-Grounds, which are commonly of a sandy Soil; and if it is possible to chuse the Situation of a Pond, it is counted much better to have it near the Bottom of Hills, that upon the Fall of great Rains may wash down Insects, and other nourishable Matter into it: And if it could be contrived, the Water should be always current through it. Where this happens, the same Fund of Water will maintain one third Part more Fish than it would do, if it was only a still Water.

In the Making of a Pond, we ought to contrive, that it may have all Degrees of Depth as far as six Feet; for if the Fish happen to breed in it, the young Fry or Spawn must have shallow Water to live and swim in; and the Spawn itself, while it is in the Egg, would be unfruitful was it to lie in deep Water. Again, as the young Fish grow bigger, they change their Station more and more towards the Deep, till they become of a fit Size to breed and produce others.

It is rarely known that in a good breeding Pond the Fish ever come to be very large; for the Number of them become so great, that they over-stock the Water, and are straitened for Food. I have been told, that where the shallowest Part of a Pond is about two Feet

Feet in Water, neither *Carp*, *Pike*, *Tench*, or *Perch*, will breed in it, because it is too deep for the Spawn to hatch, if the Fish should be inclined to lay any; and in such Places the Fish grow very large, and thrive a-pace, if they were at first rightly proportioned to the Quantity of Water, and put in at a right Age.

An Acre of Water (if all the Parts of the Pond, one with another, measure three Feet deep) may well enough bear ninety Brace of *Carps*, which is about a Rod of Water to each Fish; or else eighty Brace of *Carps*, and twenty Brace of *Tench*; and so in Proportion for every ten Brace of *Carp* wanting, allow twenty Brace of *Tench*. These Fish delight to be together; and the viscous Matter upon the Bodies of the *Tench* is often serviceable to such *Carp* as have by Accident been wounded.

It is found by Experience, that both these Kinds of Fish thrive much better in old Ponds than those that have been newly made; and there is this Reason for it, that in a Pond newly cut or dug, the Water is not all of one Piece, or partaking of the same Qualities, which it must have sufficient Time to draw from the Earth, and circulate through, or mix with every Part alike of the Water; for it is a Maxim, that Fish never thrive which have any Change of Water after they are two Years old, and therefore always stock Ponds with Store of the second Year.

It is likewise observable, that a Plantation of Trees too near a Pond, is apt to infect the Water with its falling Leaves; but, on the other Hand, Shelter is necessary, and is much the best, as it consists of Herbs and Plants, which naturally grow in the Waters, such as *Water-Lillies*, *Pond-Weeds*, and *Flags*, which feed and afford a great Number of Insects for the Fish to feed upon, and help to guard them from the too great Heats of the Sun: But chiefly these Weeds are useful to *Pike* and *Perch*, and they are better fed Fish, and much larger in such Ponds, than where they have only a naked Water. The *Pike* being a Fish of Prey, will admit of no Fish to abide with it but the *Perch*, and that only avoids the voracious Appetite of the *Pike* by Means of the thorny Fins on its Back. In these Ponds however, it is a common Practice to sling in a Parcel of *Roach* for the Food of the *Jacks*. These, as well as the *Carp* and *Tench*, may be fed with Blood and Bran mixed together, Raspings of Bread, or the Entrails of Fowl or Sheep; and, if they are regularly used to be fed in this Way, at a constant Hour and Place of the Pond, they will in a short Time become undaunted, and feed before us.

It is proper to cast in Bavins in some Places not far from the Side, and in the most sandy Spots, both for Fish to spawn upon, and to defend the young Fry, especially the Spawn of the *Carp* and *Tench*.

All Authors advise, that you make Choice of such a Place for your Pond, that it may be refreshed with a little Rill, or with Rain-water running or falling into it; by which Fish are both more inclined to breed, and are refreshed and fed the better.

Such Ponds as are large, and have most Gravel and Shallows where Fish may sport themselves, are held to afford Fish of the purest Taste. And in all Ponds it is best for Fish to have some retiring Place, as hollow Banks, or Shelves, or Roots of Trees, to keep them from Danger; and, when they think fit, from the extream Heat of Summer, and Cold in Winter.

Cleanse your Pond, if you expect either Profit or Pleasure, once every three or four Years, and then let it lie dry some Months. If you sow Oats in the Bottom, it is esteemed good, for the Fish feed the faster. And your Pond being sometimes let dry, you may observe what Kind of Fish either increases or thrives best in that Water; for they differ much both in their Breeding and Feeding.

*Carp*s and *Tench* thrive and breed best when no other Fish is put with them into the same Pond; for all other Fish devour their Spawn, or at least the greatest Part of it. Clods of Grass thrown into any Pond feed the *Carp*s in Summer; and Garden-Earth and Parsley refresh them when sick. When you store your Breeding-Pond, put into it two or three

three *Melters* for one *Spawner*; but in a barely feeding Pond, no Care is to be taken, whether there be most male or female *Carps*.

DISCOURSE II.

Of the Laws of Angling.

THE Laws of *England* being all public, Ignorance of their Contents excuses no Offender. It will not be amiss therefore to say something of those which concern the Angler, that he may have a certain Knowledge, how, without Offence, to demean himself amongst his Neighbours, when he goes about his Sport.

Tho' this Recreation be simply in itself lawful; yet none should go on another's Ground, without the Licence of the immediate Owner. But if one have Licence to enter into a Close for such a Space of Time, tho' he practise Angling all that Time, he is not a Trespasser, because his Fishing is no Abuse of his Licence; but this is to be understood only of Running-Streams, and not of Pits, Ponds, and standing Pools, the Owner whereof hath a Property in the Fish. *Brook*.

No Felony can be committed by taking Fish out of their natural Liberty in Rivers, because they are no Man's Property; but Felony may be committed of Fishes in a Trunk, Net, or Pond, because they are not at their natural Liberty. *Coke Inst.* 3.

If I continue fishing in another Man's Ground after Warning by the Owner, or his Servant thereunto authorized, the Owner, or his Servant, by his Command, may put me off by Force, but not beat me, except in case of Resistance by me: For then I, by resisting, make the Assault: But if he beat me, I not resisting, in that case he makes the Assault, and I may beat him in Defence of my Person, and to free myself from his Violence. 9 Ed. IV. 21. &c.

If I leave my Angle-rod behind in Another's Ground, he may take it Damage-feasant; but he can neither take it from my Person by Force, nor break it, but he is a Trespasser to me. *Reynel and Champernoons's Case.*

None shall take *Salmons* betwixt the 8th of *September*, and the 11th of *November*, nor young *Salmons* with Nets or other Engines, at Mill-pools, betwixt the Middle of *April* and the 24th of *June*, on pain of having their Nets and Engines burnt for the first Offence; for the second, to suffer a Quarter of a Year's Imprisonment; for the third, a Year's Imprisonment; and after to have their Punishment increased according to the Trespass: And in Places where fresh Waters are, Overseers of this Statute shall be assigned and sworn to enquire of the Offenders. *Westm. 2. 47. 13 Ed. 1. cap. 47.*

None shall use any Net, Device, or Engine whatsoever, to destroy, kill, or take the Spawn or Fry of *Eels*, *Pike*, *Salmon*, or of a-

ny

ny other Fish ; nor take *Salmons* or *Trouts*, not being in Season ; nor take or kill *Pikes* shorter than ten Inches, *Salmons* than sixteen, *Trouts* than eight, or *Barbels* than twelve, or more ; nor shall use any Engine or Device whatsoever to take Fish, other than and except an Angle, or a Net or Trammel of two Inches and a half Mesh or Mask ; on pain to forfeit 20 s. the Fish so wrongfully taken, and the Net or Engine so wrongfully used. 1 *Eliz. cap. 17.*

Every Person who, between the first Day of *March* and the last of *May*, shall do any Act whereby the Spawn of Fish shall be destroyed, shall forfeit the Instruments, and likewise 40 s. one Moiety to the Poor, and the other to the Prosecutor. *Stat. 3. Car. 2. cap. 9.*

Whoever fishes in the River *Severn* with, or shall make use of, any Engine or Device, whereby any *Salmon*, *Trout*, or *Barbel*, under the Length appointed by the *Stat. 1 Eliz. c. 17.* shall be taken or killed, or shall fish with any Net for *Salmon-Peale*, *Pike*, *Carp*, *Trout*, *Barbel*, *Chub*, or *Grayling*, the Mesh whereof shall be under two Inches and a half square from Knot to Knot, or above twenty Yards in Length and two in Breadth, or above fifty in Length and six in Breadth in the Wing of the Net, in the said River, from *Ripplelock Stake* to *Gloucester Bridge* ; or above sixty in Length, below *Gloucester Bridge*, and six Yards in Breadth in the Wing of the Net ; or shall fish with more than one of these Nets at once,

once, or shall use any Device for taking the Fry of *Eels*, shall forfeit 5 s. for every Offence, and the Fish so taken, and the Instruments, to be divided as above. *Ibidem.*

Persons taking Fish by any Device, in any several Water or River, or assisting therein, without the Owner's Consent, shall make such Recompence, and within such Time, as the Justice of Peace shall appoint, not exceeding treble Damages, and such Sum to the Overseers of the Poor as he shall also appoint, not exceeding 10 s. The Conviction is by Consent of the Party, or Oath of one Witness; the Prosecution to be in one Month. In Default of Payment, to be levied by Distress and Sale; and for Want of Distress, the Offender to be committed to the House of Correction, for any Time not exceeding one Month, unless he gives Bond, with one or more Sureties, to the Party injured, not to offend again. *Stat. 22 and 23 Car. II. c. 25.*

If any Person shall keep any Net, Angle, Leap, Piche, or other Engine for taking Fish, (except the Makers or Sellers of them, or the Owners or Occupiers of Rivers or Fisheries) such Engines, if they shall be found fishing without the Consent of the Owner or Occupier, or such other Person or Persons as he shall authorize and appoint, shall be seized; and any Person, by a Warrant under the Hand and Seal of a Justice of Peace, may search the Houses of Persons prohibited and suspected, and seize to their own Use, or destroy such Engines. 4 and 5 W. and M. c. 23. No

No Servant shall be questioned for killing a Trespasser, within his Master's Liberty, who will not yield, if not done out of former Malice: Yet if the Trespasser kills any such Servant it is Murder. 21 *Eliz.*

The *Stat. 1 Eliz. c. 17.* not to restrain the taking of *Smelts, Loaches, Minnows, Bull-heads, Gudgeons, or Eels,* with Nets or Engines formerly used, so that no other Fish be taken therewith; nor to abridge any former Privilege of Conservancy lawfully enjoyed, or fishing in *Tweed, Uske, or Wye,* or in Waters let to Farm by the Crown; so that the Spawn or Fry of Fish be not therein wilfully destroyed.

None shall unlawfully break, cut down, cut out, or destroy any Head or Heads, Dam or Dams, of any Ponds, Pools, Moats, Stagnes, Stews, or separate Pits, wherein Fish are, or shall happen to be put by the Owners or Possessors thereof; or shall wrongfully fish in the same, to the intent to destroy, kill, take, or steal away any of the same Fish against the Mind of the Owners thereof, without License of the Owner, on pain of suffering three Months Imprisonment, and to be bound to good Behaviour for seven Years after: And the Party, in Sessions or elsewhere, shall recover treble Damages against the Delinquent. 5 *Eliz.*

None shall erect a Weir or Weirs along the Sea-shore, or in any Haven or Creek, or within 5 Miles of the Mouth of any Haven or Creek, or shall willingly take or destroy any Spawn, Fry, or Brood of any Sea-fish, on Pain of

10 *l.* to be divided between the King and the Prosecutor. Neither shall Any fish in any of the said Places, with any Net of a less Mesh than three Inches and a half between Knot and Knot (except for *Smoulds* in *Norfolk* only) or with a Canvas-Net, or other Engine, whereby the Spawn or Fry of Fish may be destroyed, on Pain of forfeiting the said Net or Engine, and 10 *s.* in Money, to be divided between the Poor and the Prosecutor. 3 *Jac. cap. 12.*

By the Statute of 17 *Ric. II. cap. 9.* Justices of Peace shall be Conservators of the Statute of *Westm. 2. cap. 47.* and 13 *Ric. II. cap. 19.* and shall have Power to search all Weirs, lest by their Straitness the Fry of Fish may be destroyed. And the said Justices shall have Power to appoint and swear Under-Conservators, to hear and determine Offences of this Kind, and to punish the Offenders by Imprisonment and Fine, whereof the Under-Conservator which informs is to have the half. The Mayor or Wardens of *London* have, by the same Statute, like Power in the *Thames*, from *Stanes* to *London*, and in *Medway* as far as the City Grant extends. And every Justice of Peace before whom such Offender shall be convicted, may cut in Pieces, and destroy all and every the Nets and Engines whatsoever, wherewith the Offender is apprehended.



Receipts for Dressing of Fish.

TO dress a *Chub*, scale and wash him clean, and take out his Guts; put Tops of Rosemary, Thyme, Sweet Marjoram, Parsley, and Winter Savoury, into his Belly, and then tie him with two or three Splinters to a Spit, and roast him, basted often with Vinegar, or rather Verjuice and Butter, and good Store of Salt mixed with it. This Way makes him a good Dish of Meat, and dries up the watery Humour, with which all *Chubs* abound. Other Fish may be dressed thus, as *Barbel*, *Tench*, *Bream*, &c. basting them with Butter only.

Or, when you have scaled a *Chub*, cut off his Tail, Fins, and Gills; wash him very clean, and taking out the Guts, slit him thro' the Middle; then give him three or four Scotches on the Back with your Knife, and broil him leisurely on a clear Fire, basting him with the best sweet Butter and Salt, to which add a little Thyme cut small, or bruised into the Butter. Turn him often whilst he is broiling.

To dress a *Trout*, wash and dry him with a clean Napkin; then open him, and having taken out his Guts and Blood, and cut away his Gills, wipe him very clean within, but wash him not, and give him three Scotches with

with the Knife to the Bone on one Side only : After which take a clean Kettle, and put in as much Vinegar, with a little White-wine and Water, as will cover the Fish you intend to boil. Then throw into the Liquor a good Quantity of Salt, the Rind of a Lemon, a Handful of sliced Horse-radish Root, with a little Bundle of Rosemary, Thyme, Sweet Marjoram, Parsley, and Winter-Savoury. Set your Kettle upon a quick Wood-fire, and let your Liquor boil up to the Height before you put in your Fish. If there be many, put one by one, and whilst they are boiling, beat up the Butter for your Sauce, with a Ladleful or two of the hot Liquor, an Anchovy or two being dissolved in it. Being boiled enough, immediately pour the Liquor from the Fish, and laying them in a Dish, pour your Butter upon them, strewing plentifully over it shaved Horse-radish Root, and a little pounded Ginger. Garnish the Sides of your Dish, and the Fish itself, with a sliced Lemon or two. In this Manner you may dress a Samlet : Also *Grayling, Carp, Bream, Roach, Dace*, may be dressed after the same Manner, only they are to be scaled, which a *Trout* never is. A *Pike* too may be thus dressed, the Slime being well scoured off with Water and Salt ; and a *Perch* and *Tench*.

To stew *Salmon*, take the Fish, draw it, scotch the Back, put it whole or in Pieces into a Stew-pan, with Vinegar, White-wine, and Water, as much as will cover the Fish : Put

also to it some whole Cloves, large Mace, sliced Nutmeg, sliced Ginger, a Bay-Leaf, a Bundle of the Tops of Rosemary, stripped Thyme, sweet Marjoram, Winter-savoury, and pickled Parsley, some whole Pepper, Currants, Salt, Butter, and an Orange in half; stew all leisurely together, and, when well-stewed, dish them with carved Sippets; lay on the Spices and sliced Lemon; run it over with Butter beaten up in some of the Liquor it was stewed in. Thus you may also stew any other Fish, as *Carp*, *Pike*, *Perch*, &c.

Take a large *Carp*, alive, if possible, scour him clean with Water and Salt; then open him, and put him, with his Blood and his Liver, into a small Kettle: Then take Sweet Marjoram, Thyme, and Parsley, of each half an Handful, a Sprig of Rosemary, and another of Savoury, bind them into two or three small Bundles, and put them to your Fish, with three or four whole Onions, twenty pickled Oysters, and three Anchovies. Then pour upon your *Carp* as much Claret as will cover him, seasoned well with Salt, Cloves, Mace, sliced Nutmegs, and the Rinds of Oranges and Lemons. Cover your Pot, and set it over a quick Fire, till it be sufficiently boiled. When you take out the *Carp*, lay it with the Broth in the Dish, and pour upon it some of the best fresh Butter melted, and beaten with half a Dozen Spoonfuls of the Broth, the Yolks of two or three Eggs, and some of the Herbs shred. Garnish your Dish with Lemons.

The

The best Way of dressing a large *Eel* is this. Wash him in Water and Salt; then pull off his Skin below his Vent, and not much further: Take out his Guts as clean as you can, but wash him not; then give him three or four Scotches with a Knife, and put into his Belly and those Scotches the Tops of sweet Herbs, as Rosemary, Sweet-Marjoram, Winter-Savory, Thyme, and Parsley; and Anchovy, with a little Nutmeg grated. Your Herbs and Anchovies must be cut very small, and mixed with good Butter and Salt. Then pull his Skin over him all but his Head, which you are to cut off, that you may tie his Skin about that Part where his Head grew, so as to keep all his Moisture within the Skin. Fasten him with Packthread to a Spit; roast him leisurely, and baste him with Water and Salt, till his Skin breaks, and then with Butter. Having roasted him enough, let what was put into his Belly be mixed with beaten Butter for his Sauce. You may *spitchcock*, or broil him, with the same Ingredients.

To collar *Eels*, take those that are large, flay, draw, and wipe them clean with a Linnen Cloth; part them down the Back, and take out the Bone; then take the sweet Herbs before mentioned, mince them all small, and mingle them with Nutmeg, Cloves, Ginger, Pepper, all beaten into Powder; and Salt. Strew this on the Inside of the *Eels*; then roll them up like a Collar of Brawn, and put them in a clean Linnen Cloth, tied at both Ends,

and bound close with Packthread. Boil them in Water, Vinegar, and Salt, till they be very tender. But let the Liquor boil before you put in the *Eels*. When boiled enough, take them out, and when they and the Liquor are cold, put them in again, and you may therein keep them five or six Days, or more. But if you will have the *Eels* to keep a Month or more, put no Herbs to them, but very highly season them with Cloves, Mace, Nutmeg, Pepper, and Salt, and then proceed as before, &c. Boil the Pickle they are kept in every fourteen Days, and add the Water and Vinegar at the Boiling.

Mr. *Walton* gives this excellent Receipt for roasting a *Pike*. First, open your *Pike* at the Gills, and if there be Occasion, cut also a little Slit towards the Belly: Out of these take his Guts, and keep his Liver, which you are to shred very small with Thyme, Sweet-Marjoram, and a little Winter Savoury: To these put some pickled Oysters, and two or three Anchovies, both Oyster and Anchovies whole; for the latter will melt, and the other should not: To these you must add a Pound of sweet Butter, which you are to mix with the Herbs that are shred, and let them all be well salted. If the *Pike* be above a Yard long, the Quantity of Butter should be more than a Pound; or if he be under, then less will suffice. These, being thus mixed, with a Blade or two of Mace, must be put into the *Pike's* Belly, and then his Belly so sewed up, if possible,

possible, as to keep in all the Butter ; if not, as much of it as you possibly can, without taking off the Scales. Next thrust the Spit through his Mouth out at his Tail ; and then take four, five, or six split Sticks, or very thin Lathes, and a convenient Quantity of Tape or Filletting : The Lathes are to be tied round about the *Pike's* Body from his Head to his Tail, and the Tape tied somewhat thick, to prevent his breaking or falling off from the Spit. Let him be roasted very leisurely, and often basted with Claret Wine, Anchovies, and Butter mixed together, and also with what Moisture falls from him into the Pan. When you have roasted him sufficiently, you are to hold under him, when you cut the Tape that ties him, the Dish that you propose to eat him out of ; and let him fall into it, with the Sauce that is roasted in his Belly, by which Means the *Pike* will be kept unbroken and compleat. Then, to the Sauce which was within, and also that in the Pan, add a sufficient Quantity of the best Butter, and squeeze the Juice of three or four Oranges. Lastly, you may either put into the *Pike*, with the Oysters, two Cloves of Garlick, and take it whole out when the *Pike* is cut off the Spit ; or, to give the Sauce a high Flavour, let the Dish be rubbed. The using or not using this Garlick is left to your Discretion.

The following is a general Way for all Sorts of Fish. To boil your *Fish*, take one Quart of White-wine, or a Pint of White-

wine Vinegar, three or four Quarts of Water, a Bunch of sweet Herbs, and a good Handful of Salt: Let it boil a Quarter of an Hour before the Fish be put in. And to make Sauce, take a few Cloves and Mace, Anchovies, and half Pint of White-wine: Or you may, otherwise, melt your Butter with a little Water and the Juice of Lemon, with some Nutmeg, Horse-radish, and Lemon-peel, an Onion, and two Drops of Spirit of Salt, one Pint of stewed Oysters, and a little whole Pepper among the Butter. Let not the Onion or Horse-radish be put into the Dish of Fish with the Sauce.

To boil a *Tench*, let the Liquor be made of Water and Salt, a Bunch of Thyme, an Onion, Lemon-peel, a little Horse-radish, and a Quarter of a Pint of Vinegar. Take no more Water than is sufficient to cover the *Tench*, which must be put in before the Water boils, to prevent them from cracking. When they are boiled, make your Sauce with two Anchovies, boiled in a little Water till they are dissolved. Then let it stand to settle, drain it off, and add what Quantity of Butter you think fit, half a Pint of stewed Oysters, and a Quarter of a Pint of Shrimps. Garnish the Dish with Lemon and Mushrooms.

F I N I S.

I N D E X.

Wherein several Terms used by ANGLERS
are occasionally explained.

A.

ACTION and Contemplation compared,
Page 6, 7.
Angler, Directions concerning him, 251.
for his Choice of Stands, Baits, &c. 252--
260.

Angling praised and defended, 5—13. Its Anti-
quity 5. Utility 6. Lawfulness, 10. Dignity, *ib.*
Sir *Henry Wotton's* Character of it, 13.

Angling, Practice of, interspersed in the first and se-
cond, and through the whole third Part.

Angling, Seasons of, 262--271. Various Methods
of, 279. with Running-Line, 280--284. Floats
284, 285, 286. At Top with a Worm, 287.
At Ground for small Fish, 289. Ledger-Bait, 290.

Angling-Scene, Description of one in Verse, 294.

Angling, Laws of, 306--311.

Ant-fly, to procure, 83. to use, 84.

Apparatus, the Angler's. See the whole first Part.

Arm a Hook, how to, 52.

Ash-grub Bait, 77. Fly, 91.

B.

Bacon, for Bait, 94.

Bags of Air in Fish, their Use, 25.

Bags for Anglers, 59.

Baits, natural, an Account of them, 61--96. Verses
on, 81, 96. Artificial or factitious, 96--127. of
several Fish, in Verse, 257.

I N D E X.

Barbel, his Description, Character, and Haunts, 197, 198. Baits, 199. how to angle for, 200. Verses on, 201.

Bark-worm, 77.

Bawlk, a Knot in a Hair or Link.

Bed Hairs bed well when they twist kindly.

Bedding, the Body of an artificial Fly.

Berries, several Sorts for Baits, 90.

Black-bee for Bait, 94.

Bleak, Description, Baits, and Manner of taking him, 234, 235. Verses on him, 236.

Bobs, the two Sorts of them, 70, 71.

Bobbing for Eels, 221.

Brandling-worm, 63, 66.

Bream, his Description, Character, and Haunts, 201, 202. Baits 202, 203. Large Directions in angling for him, 203---208. Verses on him, 209. *Sea-Bream*, 246.

Break, a Knot in the Joint of a Rod.

Brood of Wasps, Hornets, and Humble-bees, 85.

Brogging or Snigging for Eels, 220.

Browne, Mr. Verses of his, 81. 261.

Bull-heads for Baits, 87. Described, 238.

Eull-trout in Northumberland, 141.

C.

Cadews, the several Sorts of them, 72--74. how to angle with, 74, 75. Artificial, how to make, 76.

Carp, his Character, 185, 186. Fecundity, 22, 186. Strangely destroy'd, 187. Manner of Spawning, *ib.* Baits and Haunts, 188---191. Ways of taking, 190, 191, 192. Verses on him and the *Tench*, 195, 196.

Caterpillars, Cabbage, and Crabtree-worms, 87.

Char, a local Fish, Account of him, 240, 241.

Cheese for Bait, 90.

Chine a Salmon, cut him up.

Chub,

I N D E X.

Chub, or *Chevin*, his Character, 210. how to catch, *ib.* 211. Baits, 211--214. Haunts and Seasons, 213. Biting-time, 214. Verses on, 215. To dress, 312.

Clap-bait, or *Cow-turd-bob*, 71.

Cobler, or *Miller's-Thumb*, an Impediment to Rock-fishers, 296.

Cock. A Float cocks when it swims upright above the Water.

Cockspur Cadews, 72.

Codbaits, the best Way to carry and keep, 59. See Cadews.

Cod-fish, Remark on them, 19. Their Fecundity, 22.

Cold, Verses on its Effect on Fishes, 192.

Conger, or great Sea-Eel, 222.

Cricket, House, for Baits, 89. Water, or Creeper, *ib.*

Conington-Mere, famous for Chars, 241.

D.

Dabbing, angling with a live Fly, 290--294.

Dace, his Character, 226. Baits, and Manner of taking him, *ib.*---230. Verses on him, 230.

Davors, Mr. his Poem on Angling, 29, 31.

Dew-worm, 62.

Dibbing, or *Dibbling*, the same as *Dabbing*, 290---294.

Dock-worm, 79.

Drag, an Instrument to disentangle the Line.

Dub-flies, see *Flies*, artificial.

E.

Earth-bob, or *Grub*, 70.

Earth-worms, what, 61, 62.

Earwig for Bait, 94.

Eel, his Character, and how produced, 216. Haunts, 217. Kinds, 218. Baits and Times of biting, *ib.* Chief Places, 219. Brogling or Snigling for him, 220. Bobbing, 221. Verses on him, 223. To dress, 315.

Eel,

I N D E X.

Eel or *Elver Cake*, 217, 220.

Eel-pouts described, 222.

Eyes of *Fish* for *Bait*, 93.

F.

Fern-fly, or *Fern-bud*, 94.

Fins of *Fishes*, their *Use*, 22.

Fin a Chub, cut him up.

Fish, general *Observations* on their *Nature*, 14--29.

 Their *Element*, 15. *Clothing*, 16. *Numbers*, 17.

Passage, 19. *Wars*, 20, 21. *Fecundity*, 22. *Food*,

 23. *Figure*, *ib.* 24. *Use* of their *Tails* and *Fins*, 24.

Bags of *Air*, 25. *Gills*, 27. *Other Parts*, *ib.* *Sensa-*

tions, 28. **E**n*umeration* of their *Enemies* in *Verse*,

 261.

Fishermen, the *Apostles* so, 8, 9. Their plain *Stile*,

 10.

Fish-ponds, a *Discourse* of them, 301--306. *Depth* of

 them, 302. *Proportion* to a *Number* of *Fish*,

 303. *How* infected, 304. *Other Remarks*, 305.

Fish-books mentioned in the *Old Testament*, 6.

Flag-worm, 79.

Flies, natural, 84. 91--94. *Verses* on 94. *Artificial*,

 106.-126. *Verses* on, 126. *How* to use, 108. *To*

make, 109, 110. 114, 115, 116. *Catalogues* of,

 106, 107. 117—126.

Floats for *Angling*, 53--56. *Of Cork*, 53. *To ce-*

ment, 55. *Double*, 56. *To angle* with, 284,

 285, 286.

Flounders, *Description*, *Haunts*, and *Manner* of taking

 them, 243, 244. *Verses* on them and others, 245.

Sea, 246.

Fordige, or *Fordwich Trout*, 140.

Frogs for *Bait*, 93. Their wonderful *Enmity* to *Pikes*,

 163.

Frush a Chub, dress him.

G.

Garden-worm, 62.

I N D E X.

- Gentles* or *Maggots*, to procure, 79, 80. To imitate, 81.
- Gildard*, the Link of a Line.
- Gills* of Fishes, their Use, 27,
- Gilt-tail-worm*, 63.
- Gobbet a Trout*, cut him up.
- Grabble*: One fishes on the Grabble when the Line is sunk with a running Plummet fast to the Bottom, so that the Hook-Link plays in the Water.
- Grain* for Bait, 83.
- Grasshoppers* for Bait, 88.
- Gray-drake-fly*, 92. artificial, 120.
- Grayling*, his Character, 153. Haunts, 154. Seasons, 155. Baits, and how to angle for, *ib.* Verses on him, *ib.*
- Green-drake-fly*, 92. Artificial, 120.
- Gudgeon*, his Character, Haunts, and Baits, 231. Verses on him, 232.
- Guiniad*, a local Fish, Account of him, 240, 241.
- ## H.
- Haddock*, an Account of him, 248. how to take him, 298.
- Hang a Fish*, hook him.
- Hairs* for Lines, to chuse and prepare, 39.
- Haunts* of several Fish, in Verse, 253.
- Hawthorn-fly*, 93.
- Hearing*, Sense of, enjoy'd by Fish, 28.
- Hooks*, Fish, how to make, 51. to chuse, *ib.* to arm or whip, 52.
- Hooking* a Pike, 179.
- Huxing* for a Pike, 168.
- ## K.
- Kink*. A Line kinks in Trowling when it is twisted between the Top of the Rod and the Ring.
- Kipper*, what it means, 79.
- ## L.
- Lamprey* for Bait, 88.
- Lampreys* in the *Severn*, 219.
- Land-*

I N D E X.

- Landing-hook* and *Landing-net*, 60.
Laws of Angling, 306 ——— 311.
Leap, see *Salmon*.
Leash of Fish, three.
Leather-mouthed, the Meaning of that Term, 212.
Ledger-bait for a Pike, 165—168. To angle with, 290.
Leuwenhoeck, Mr. his Observation on the Fecundity of Fish, 22.
Limperis-Pool, where *Tor-coch*, are found, 241.
Lines, Angling, to prepare, 39. To dye, 40, 41. To make up, 42, 43. For *Cast-fly*, 44. *Running Worm*, 46. *Float*, 47. *Dibbing*, *ib.* *Ground*, 48. *Trowling*, *ib.* *Barbel* and *Chub*, *ib.* Verses on, 49. How to lead, 56.
Line-cases, how to make, 58.
Loach for Bait, 87. Described, 237.
Lob-worm, 62.
Luce, see *Pike*.

M.

- Mackerel*, how to take, 299.
Magazine, the Angler's, 59. Verses on, 61. for artificial Flies, 110, 112.
Maggots or *Gentles*, 79, 80.
Marrow or *Pith*, a Bait, 94.
Marsh or *Meadow-worm*, 64.
May-Flies, several Sorts of them, 91, 92, 93. artificial, 111, 120, 123. How to bait the natural ones, 293.
Miller's-Thumb, the same as *Bull-head* and *Cobler*.
Milton, his *Lines* on the Sea Fish, 300.
Minnow for Bait, 87. Described, 236, 237. Verses on him and others, 239. Artificial, 288.
Months of Angling, artificial Flies for each, 117—126.
Moths for Bait, 93.

Mul-

I N D E X.

Mullets, Description and Manner of taking them
244, 245.

N.

Needler, Mr. *Henry*, his Verses on the Seasons for
Angling, 262.

Night-hooks, how to lay, 287.

Nowell, Dr. a great Angler, his Character, 11.

O.

Oak-worm, 68.

Oak-fly, 91.

Oat-Cake for Bait, 91.

Ointments or *Unguents*, 99—105.

P.

Pastes for Bait, several Sorts of, 96—99. How
to use, 99.

Palmer-worm and *Fly*, 68. Artificial, 109.

Perch, his Character, 181. Haunts and Biting-
time, 182. Baits, 183, 184. How to angle for,
ib. Verses on, 184, 185.

Perriwinkle-bait, 95.

Pike, how produced, 156, 164, long-lived, 156, 157.
described, 157. Haunts, Baits, and Biting-time,
158, 159, 164, 165, 177. Voraciousness, 158,
160. Character, 161, 162. At enmity with
Frogs, 169. Spawning, 162. How to take,
165. By a Ledger-bait, *ib.* —168. By Hux-
ing, 168. With a dead Bait, *ib.* By Trowling,
169—175. By Snapping, 175, 176, 177. By
Snaring and Hooking, 179. Verses on, *ib.* 180.
To Dress 316.

Piper Cadews, 72.

Plummets for Lines, 57, 58.

Pope, Mr. his Lines on Angling, 20. On the Ri-
vers that compose the *Thames*, 279.

Pope, or *Ruff*, Description and Manner of taking him,
233. Verses on him, 234.

Providence, Instances of its Care, 18.

I N D E X.

- Pemble-mere*, famous for Guiniads, 240.
- Pouch*. A Pike pouches when he swallows the Bait.
- Prime*, leap out of the Water.
- Q.
- Quills*, how to dye, 156.
- R.
- Red-worm*, 63.
- Revelations*, where generally made, 7.
- Rivers*, their Beauty and Usefulness, 2—5. The principal in *England*, 271 — 278. Enumerated in Verse, 274.
- Roach*, his Character and Season, 223. Haunts and Baits, 224. Ways of Angling for him, 225. Verses on him, *ib.*
- Rocks*, Fish taken on, 246, 247. Verses on them, 249. Manner of taking them, 295, 296, 297.
- Rods*, when to provide, 33. How to chuse and order, *ib.* 34. For the Ground Angle, 34. Fly-Angling, *ib.* For Roach, Dace, &c. 37. To colour, 36. Verses on, 38.
- Rud*, a Kind of Roach, described, 224, 225. Verses on him, 226.
- Ruff*, the same as Pope.
- Ruff-coat* Cadews, 73.
- Running-Line*, to angle with, 280 — 284.
- S.
- Salmon*, his Haunts 129, 133, 135. Spawning-time, 129. Necessity of getting into the Sea, 130. His Leap, 131. Growth, 132. Baits, 133, 137. Times of Biting, 136. Verses on, 131, 138. Laws for preserving them, 307. How to dress, 313.
- Salmon-Peale*, his Haunts and Baits, 138.
- Salmon-Spawn*, for Bait, 86.
- Samlet*, *Salmon Smelt*, or *Salmon Fry*, 138.
- Scale*, any great Number of Fish together.

I N D E X.

- Seasons* for Angling described in Prose and Verse,
262 — 271.
- Sea-Fishing*, the Manner of it, 297 — 300.
- Seven-Eyes* for Bait, 88.
- Severn*, Laws of Angling there, 308.
- Sheeps-blood* Bait, 83.
- Shrimps* and *Prawns*, how to take them, 299.
- Side a Haddock*, cut him up.
- Size of Fish* that may be taken, 308.
- Skeggers*, a Sort of Salmons, 130.
- Smelts*, when, where, and how taken, 245.
- Snails* for Bait, 88.
- Snapping* for a Pike, 175, 176, 177.
- Snaring* a Pike, 179.
- Snigling* for Eels, 220.
- Solay a Bream*, cut him up.
- Splate a Pike*, cut him up.
- Stile of the sacred Writers*, a Remark on it, 9.
- Stone-fly*, 92. Artificial, 121.
- Straw-worm* Cadews, 73.
- Sticklebag*, his Description, &c. 238.
- Swallows*, a Way of Angling for them, 235.
- T.
- Tag-tail Worm*, 64.
- Tails of Fishes*, their Use, 24.
- Thames*, River, a particular Account of it, 272, 275,
276. and of the Rivers that fall into it, 276 —
279. In Verse, 279.
- Tench*, his Character and Description, 193. Baits,
Haunts, Season and Biting-time, 194, 195. Verses
on him and the Carp, 195, 196. To Dress, 318.
- Thrasb*, any Thing which swims down the Water,
and incommodes the Angler.
- Tickle-back*, the same as *Sticklebag*.
- Tor-coch*, a local Fish, 241.
- TROUT*, the Venison of the Waters, 139. Sorts of,
140, 141. Seasons, 142. Haunts, 143. Baits,
144.

I N D E X.

144, 145, 146. Places remarkable for, 145:
How to angle for, 147 — 151. Verses on, 151,
152. Dibbing for, 291. To Dress 312.

Trout-lice or Sugs, 142.

Trounchen an Eel, cut him up.

Trowling for a Pike, 169 — 175.

Tusk a Barbel, cut him up.

Twatchel-worm, 62.

U.

Veer your Line, let it out from the Reel after Striking.

Umber, see *Grayling*.

Unguents or Ointments for Bait, 99 — 105.

W.

Walton, Mr. his List of Flies, 106, 107.

Water, Element of, 15.

Water-cricket or *Water-louse*, 89.

Weirs, Law concerning them, 310.

Whet-stone for Anglers, 58.

Whiting Pollock, 247. *Rock*, *ib.* True 248. How
to take them, 297, 298.

Whip a Hook, how to, 52.

White-grub or *Bob*, 70.

Winander-mere, famous for Chars, 240.

Wooll-bed or *Canker-worm*, 68.

Woodcock-fly, 91.

Worms, the several Sorts of them, 62 — 70. How
to keep, order, and scour, 65 — 68.

Wotton, Sir *Henry*, a great Angler, 12. His Cha-
racter of Angling, 13. Verses of his, *ib.*

E R R A T A.

P A G E 50. Title of Chap. III. *Landing-Lines*, read
Landing-Hooks: p. 90. l. 10. *Bare erries*, r. *are*
Berries. p. 132. l. 17. *all Yerking*, r. *Still Yerking*. p. 133.
l. 15. *that*, r. *than*. p. 192. l. 30. *Doze*, r. *Ooze*. p. 294.
l. 27. *blating*, r. *bleating*.

